

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, D.C. 20549

**FORM S-3
REGISTRATION STATEMENT
UNDER
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

Veritex Holdings, Inc.

(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in its Charter)

Veritex Holdings, Inc.
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Texas
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

27-0973566
(I.R.S. Employer Identification Number)

**8214 Westchester Drive, Suite 400
Dallas, Texas 75225
(972) 349-6200**

(Address, including zip code and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

**C. Malcolm Holland, III
Chairman and Chief Executive Officer
Veritex Holdings, Inc.
8214 Westchester Drive, Suite 400
Dallas, Texas 75225
(972) 349-6200**

(Name, address, including zip code and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

Copies to:

William S. Anderson
Bracewell & Giuliani LLP
711 Louisiana, Suite 2300
Houston, Texas 77002
(713) 223-1122
(713) 437-5370 (facsimile)

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public: From time to time after the effective date of this registration statement.

If the only securities being registered on this form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box.

If any of the securities being registered on this form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, other than securities offered only in connection with dividend or interest reinvestment plans, check the following box.

If this form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering.

If this form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

If this form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a nonaccelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>
Nonaccelerated filer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Smaller reporting company	<input type="checkbox"/>

CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

Title of Each Class of Securities to be Registered	Amount to be Registered(1)	Proposed Maximum Offering Price Per Unit (2)	Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price(1)(2)(3)	Amount of Registration Fee(4)
Debt Securities				
Common Stock, par value \$0.01 per share				
Preferred Stock, par value \$0.01 per share				
Warrants				
Units				
Total	\$ 150,000,000		\$ 150,000,000	\$ 15,105

- There are being registered hereunder such indeterminate number of shares of common stock, shares of preferred stock, warrants, units and/or principal amount of debt securities of the registrant as shall have an aggregate initial offering price not to exceed \$150,000,000. Also being registered hereunder by the registrant are an indeterminate number of shares of common stock, shares of preferred stock, warrants, units, or debt securities as shall be issuable upon exercise, conversion, or exchange of any securities that provide for such issuance. If any debt securities are issued at an original issue discount, then the offering price shall be in such greater principal amount as shall result in an aggregate initial offering price not to exceed \$150,000,000.
- The proposed maximum offering price per unit will be determined from time to time by the registrant in connection with, and at the time of, the issuance of the securities registered hereunder, and is not specified as to each class of securities to be registered pursuant to General Instruction II.D of Form S-3 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.
- Excludes any accrued interest, distributions and dividends, if any.
- Pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act, the registration fee has been calculated on the basis of the proposed maximum aggregate offering price.

The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Securities and Exchange Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.

The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any state where the offer or sale is not permitted.

PROSPECTUS

Subject to Completion, dated November 10, 2015



Veritex Holdings, Inc.

Debt Securities
Common Stock
Preferred Stock
Warrants
Units

By this prospectus, Veritex Holdings, Inc. may offer from time to time:

- debt securities of one or more series;
- shares of its common stock;
- shares of one or more series of its preferred stock;
- warrants to purchase our securities; and
- units of our securities.

When we offer securities, we will provide you with a prospectus supplement describing the terms of the specific issue of securities being offered, including the price at which those securities are being offered to the public.

We may offer and sell these securities to or through one or more underwriters, dealers and agents, or directly to purchasers, on a continuous or delayed basis.

You should read this prospectus and any prospectus supplement carefully before you decide to invest. This prospectus may not be used to sell securities unless it is accompanied by a prospectus supplement that further describes the securities being offered to you.

Our common stock is listed for trading on the NASDAQ Global Market under the symbol "VBTX." We have not yet determined whether any of the other securities that may be offered by this prospectus will be listed on any exchange. If we decide to apply to list any such securities on a securities exchange upon their issuance, the prospectus supplement relating to those securities will disclose the exchange on which we will apply to have those securities listed.

Investing in our securities involves risks. See "Risk Factors" beginning on page 7 of this prospectus. We may include additional risk factors in an applicable prospectus supplement under the heading "Risk Factors." You should carefully read this prospectus together with the documents we incorporate by reference and the prospectus supplement before you invest in our securities.

This prospectus is not an offer to sell any securities other than the securities offered hereby. This prospectus is not an offer to sell securities in any jurisdictions or in any circumstances in which such an offer is unlawful.

Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or determined if this prospectus is truthful or complete. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.

The offered securities are not savings accounts, deposits or other obligations of any bank or savings associations and are not insured or guaranteed by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or any other governmental agency.

The date of this prospectus is , 2015.

About This Prospectus	2
About Veritex Holdings, Inc.	3
Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements	4
Risk Factors	7
Ratio of Combined Fixed Charges and Preferred Stock Dividends to Earnings	8
Use of Proceeds	9
The Securities We May Offer	10
Description of Debt Securities	11
Description Of Common Stock	38
Description of Preferred Stock	42
Description of Warrants	44
Description of Unit Purchase Agreements	48
Book Entry Issuance	49
Plan of Distribution	52
Where You Can Find More Information	55
Incorporation of Certain Documents by Reference	56
Validity of the Securities	58
Experts	59

You should rely only on the information contained in or incorporated by reference in this prospectus and in the applicable prospectus supplement when deciding whether to invest. We have not authorized anyone to give oral or written information about this offering, our Company, or the securities offered hereby that is different from the information included or incorporated by reference in this prospectus. If anyone provides you with different information, you should not rely on it. You should assume that the information contained in this prospectus is accurate only as of the date on the front cover of this prospectus. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since that date.

[Table of Contents](#)

ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

This prospectus is part of a registration statement on Form S-3 that we filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, using a “shelf” registration process. Under this shelf registration statement, we may offer and sell, from time to time and in one or more offerings, either separately or together, shares of our common stock, shares of one or more series of our preferred stock, senior debt securities of one or more series, subordinated debt securities of one or more series, warrants to purchase our securities and unit purchase agreements as described in this prospectus and an applicable prospectus supplement.

Each time we sell securities we will provide a prospectus supplement containing specific information about the terms of the securities being offered thereby. The prospectus supplement may include a discussion of any risk factors or other special considerations that apply to those securities. The prospectus supplement may also add, update or change the information in this prospectus. If there is any inconsistency between the information in this prospectus (including the information incorporated by reference herein) and information in any prospectus supplement, you should rely on the information in the applicable prospectus supplement as it will control. You should carefully read both this prospectus and the applicable prospectus supplement together with additional information described under the heading “Where You Can Find More Information” or incorporated herein by reference as described under the heading “Incorporation of Certain Documents by Reference.”

References in this prospectus to “our Company,” “we,” “us” and “our” are to Veritex Holdings, Inc. In this prospectus, we sometimes refer to the debt securities, common stock, preferred stock, warrants and unit purchase agreements we may offer as “offered securities.”

[Table of Contents](#)

ABOUT VERITEX HOLDINGS, INC.

Veritex Holdings, Inc. is a Texas corporation headquartered in Dallas, Texas and is a bank holding company registered under the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956. Through our wholly-owned subsidiary, Veritex Community Bank, a Texas state chartered bank, we provide relationship-driven commercial banking products and services tailored to meet the needs of small to medium-sized businesses and professionals.

Our principal executive offices are located at 8214 Westchester Drive, Suite 400, Dallas, Texas 75225, and our telephone number is (972) 349-6200. Our website is www.veritexbank.com. References to our website are not intended to be active links and the information on such websites is not, and you must not consider that information to be, a part of this prospectus.

[Table of Contents](#)

SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus and the documents incorporated herein by reference contain statements that are “forward-looking statements” within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Securities Act, and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act.

Forward-looking statements included in this prospectus or the documents incorporated by reference herein are based on various facts and derived utilizing numerous important assumptions and are subject to known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that may cause our actual results, performance or achievements to be materially different from any future results, performance or achievements expressed or implied by such forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements include the information concerning our future financial performance, business and growth strategy, projected plans and objectives, as well as projections of macroeconomic and industry trends, which are inherently unreliable due to the multiple factors that impact economic trends, and any such variations may be material. Statements preceded by, followed by or that otherwise include the words “believes,” “expects,” “anticipates,” “intends,” “projects,” “estimates,” “plans” and similar expressions or future or conditional verbs such as “will,” “should,” “would,” “may” and “could” are generally forward-looking in nature and not historical facts, although not all forward-looking statements include the foregoing. You should understand that the following important factors could affect our future results and cause actual results to differ materially from those expressed in the forward-looking statements:

- risks related to the concentration of our business within the Dallas metropolitan area, including risks associated with any downturn in the real estate sector and risks associated with a decline in the values of single family homes in the Dallas metropolitan area;
- our ability to implement our growth strategy, including identifying and consummating suitable acquisitions;
- risks related to the integration of any acquired businesses, including exposure to potential asset quality and credit quality risks and unknown or contingent liabilities, the time and costs associated with integrating systems, technology platforms, procedures and personnel, the need for additional capital to finance such transactions, and possible failures in realizing the anticipated benefits from acquisitions;
- our ability to recruit and retain successful bankers that meet our expectations in terms of customer relationships and profitability;
- our ability to retain executive officers and key employees and their customer and community relationships;
- risks associated with our limited operating history and the relatively unseasoned nature of a significant portion of our loan portfolio;

4

[Table of Contents](#)

- market conditions and economic trends nationally, regionally and particularly in the Dallas metropolitan area and Texas;
- risks related to our strategic focus on lending to small to medium-sized businesses;
- the sufficiency of the assumptions and estimates we make in establishing reserves for potential loan losses;
- risks associated with our commercial loan portfolio, including the risk for deterioration in value of the general business assets that generally secure such loans;
- risks associated with our nonfarm nonresidential and construction loan portfolios, including the risks inherent in the valuation of the collateral securing such loans;
- potential changes in the prices, values and sales volumes of commercial and residential real estate securing our real estate loans;
- risks related to the significant amount of credit that we have extended to a limited number of borrowers and in a limited geographic area;
- our ability to maintain adequate liquidity and to raise necessary capital to fund our acquisition strategy and operations or to meet increased minimum regulatory capital levels;
- changes in market interest rates that affect the pricing of our loans and deposits and our net interest income;
- potential fluctuations in the market value and liquidity of our investment securities;
- the effects of competition from a wide variety of local, regional, national and other providers of financial, investment and insurance services;
- our ability to maintain an effective system of disclosure controls and procedures and internal controls over financial reporting;
- risks associated with fraudulent and negligent acts by our customers, employees or vendors;
- our ability to keep pace with technological change or difficulties when implementing new technologies;
- risks associated with system failures or failures to prevent breaches of our network security;
- risks associated with data processing system failures and errors;

5

[Table of Contents](#)

- our actual cost savings resulting from the acquisition of IBT Bancorp are less than expected, we are unable to realize those cost savings as soon as expected or we incur additional or unexpected costs;
- our revenues after the IBT Bancorp acquisition are less than expected;
- potential impairment on the goodwill we have recorded or may record in connection with business acquisitions;

- the institution and outcome of litigation and other legal proceeding against us or to which we become subject;
- our ability to comply with various governmental and regulatory requirements applicable to financial institutions;
- the impact of recent and future legislative and regulatory changes, including changes in banking, securities and tax laws and regulations and their application by our regulators, such as the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act of 2010;
- governmental monetary and fiscal policies, including the policies of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System;
- our ability to comply with supervisory actions by federal and state banking agencies;
- changes in the scope and cost of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation insurance and other coverage; and
- systemic risks associated with the soundness of other financial institutions.

Other factors not identified above, including those described under the headings “Risk Factors” and “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K (our “Latest Form 10-K”) and in any of our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, Current Reports on Form 8-K or other filings that we have made with the SEC since the date of the Latest Form 10-K that are incorporated by reference in this prospectus, may also cause actual results to differ materially from those described in our forward-looking statements. Most of these factors are difficult to anticipate and are generally beyond our control. You should consider these factors in connection with considering any forward-looking statements that may be made by us. We undertake no obligation to release publicly any revisions to any forward-looking statements, to report events or to report the occurrence of unanticipated events unless we are required to do so by law.

6

[Table of Contents](#)

RISK FACTORS

An investment in our securities involves certain risks. Before making an investment decision, you should carefully read and consider the risk factors set forth in our Latest Form 10-K under the heading “Risk Factors” as well as any updated or additional disclosure about risk factors included in any of our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, Current Reports on Form 8-K or other filings that we have made with the SEC since the date of the Latest Form 10-K that are incorporated by reference in this prospectus. We may also include updated or additional disclosure about risk factors in an applicable prospectus supplement under the heading “Risk Factors.” Additional risks and uncertainties of which we are not aware or that we believe are not material at the time could also materially and adversely affect our business, financial condition, results of operations or liquidity. In any case, the value of the securities offered by means of this prospectus and any applicable prospectus supplement could decline and you could lose all or part of your investment.

7

[Table of Contents](#)

RATIO OF COMBINED FIXED CHARGES AND PREFERRED STOCK DIVIDENDS TO EARNINGS

The following table presents the ratio of our combined fixed charges and preferred stock dividends to earnings for the periods indicated.

	Nine Months Ended September 30, 2015	Year Ended December 31,				
		2014	2013	2012	2011	2010
Excluding interest on deposits	11.80	8.14	7.51	2.72	1.15	(10.34)
Including interest on deposits	4.10	3.24	2.73	1.57	1.05	(2.31)

For purposes of computing this ratio (i) earnings consists of income before income taxes plus fixed charges and preferred stock dividends, (ii) fixed charges and preferred stock dividends, excluding interest on deposits, includes interest expense (other than on deposits), preferred stock dividends and the estimated portion of rental expense attributable to interest, and (iii) fixed charges and preferred stock dividends, including interest on deposits, includes all interest expense, preferred stock dividends and the estimated portion of rental expense attributable to interest.

8

[Table of Contents](#)

USE OF PROCEEDS

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, we expect to use the net proceeds from the sale of offered securities by us for general corporate purposes, including:

- maintenance of consolidated capital to support our growth, enabling us to continue to satisfy our regulatory capital requirements;
- contributions of capital to Veritex Community Bank to support Veritex Community Bank’s growth, enabling it to continue to satisfy its regulatory capital requirements;

· financing of acquisitions of financial institutions; and

· refinancing, reduction or repayment of debt.

The prospectus supplement with respect to an offering of offered securities may identify different or additional uses for the proceeds of that offering.

Except as otherwise stated in an applicable prospectus supplement, pending the application of the net proceeds from the sale of offered securities, we expect to either deposit such net proceeds in deposit accounts or invest them in short-term obligations.

[Table of Contents](#)

THE SECURITIES WE MAY OFFER

The descriptions of the securities contained in this prospectus, together with the applicable prospectus supplements, summarize certain material terms and provisions of the various types of securities that we may offer. The particular material terms of the securities offered by a prospectus supplement, to the extent not described in this prospectus, will be described in that prospectus supplement. If indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the terms of the offered securities may differ from the terms summarized below. The prospectus supplement will also contain, where applicable, material U.S. federal income tax considerations relating to the offered securities, and will contain information regarding the securities exchange, if any, on which the offered securities will be listed. The descriptions of our securities being offered appearing herein and in the applicable prospectus supplement do not contain all of the information that you may find useful or that may be important to you. You should refer to the provisions of the actual documents that govern those securities and whose terms are summarized herein and in the applicable prospectus supplement, because those documents, and not the summaries, define your rights as holders of the relevant securities. For more information, please review the forms of these documents, which are or will be filed with the SEC and will be available as described under the heading “Where You Can Find More Information” below.

We may offer and sell from time to time, in one or more offerings, the following:

· our debt securities of one or more series, which debt securities may be our senior, unsecured debt securities or our subordinated, unsecured debt securities;

· shares of our common stock;

· shares of one or more series of our preferred stock;

· warrants, which may be exercisable for debt securities, common stock or preferred stock; and/or

· unit purchase agreements to which investors would acquire units of two or more of the foregoing securities.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

General

We may issue senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities, which in each case will be unsecured, direct, general obligations of our Company.

The senior debt securities will rank equally in right of payment with all of our other unsecured and unsubordinated debt. The subordinated debt securities will be subordinate and junior in right of payment to our senior indebtedness, including our senior debt securities as described below under “—Subordinated Debt Securities” and in the prospectus supplement applicable to any subordinated debt securities that we may offer. For purposes of the descriptions under the heading “Description of Debt Securities,” we may refer to the senior debt securities and the subordinated debt securities collectively as the “debt securities.” The debt securities will be effectively subordinated to the creditors and preferred equity holders of our subsidiaries, if any.

We will issue senior debt securities under a senior debt indenture and issue subordinated debt securities under a subordinated debt indenture, which indentures will be, in each case, between us and U.S. Bank National Association, in its capacity as the indenture trustee. We refer to the senior debt indenture or subordinated debt indenture, together with any applicable supplemental indentures thereto, in this prospectus as an “indenture” and collectively as the “indentures.” The indentures permit one or more series of senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities, as the case may be, to be established and issued thereunder. Any such series of senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities and their terms and conditions will be established by means of the adoption of a supplemental indenture, the adoption of a resolution of our board of directors or the adoption of a resolution of our board of directors and the action of certain officers of our Company acting pursuant to authority delegated to them by such resolution of the board and evidenced by an officers’ certificate setting forth the terms and conditions of the series of debt securities established by that resolution and the action of such authorized officers. Generally, multiple series of debt securities will vary from one another with regard to the rate at which interest accrues on such debt securities and the term of such debt securities, and the senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities will vary from one another with regard to the priority of payment.

The indentures meet the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, or the “Trust Indenture Act” and will be qualified under and governed by the Trust Indenture Act. The trustee meets the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act for trustees under indentures being qualified under the Trust Indenture Act.

The descriptions under the heading “Description of Debt Securities” relating to the senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities and the indentures are summaries of their provisions. The summaries are not complete and are qualified in their entirety by reference to the indentures and senior and subordinated debt securities and the further descriptions in the applicable prospectus supplement. A copy of the form of each indenture has been filed with the

[Table of Contents](#)

certificate establishing a series of debt securities and setting the respective series' terms and conditions with the SEC in connection with the offer and sale of the first debt securities of such series to be offered and sold and will file the form of debt security representing the debt securities of such series with the SEC in connection with the offering of such debt securities. Whenever we refer in this prospectus or in any prospectus supplement to particular sections or defined terms of an indenture, those sections or defined terms are incorporated by reference in this prospectus or in the prospectus supplement, as applicable. You should refer to the provisions of the indentures for provisions that may be important to you.

The terms and conditions described under this heading are terms and conditions that apply generally to the debt securities. The particular terms of any series of debt securities will be summarized in the applicable prospectus supplement. Those terms may differ from the terms summarized below.

Except as set forth in the indentures and described in the prospectus supplements, the indentures do not limit the amount of senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities we may issue under the indentures. We are not required to issue all of the debt securities of one series at the same time and, unless otherwise provided in an indenture and described in a prospectus supplement, we may, from time to time, issue additional debt securities under that series without the consent of the holders of the outstanding debt securities of that series. Additional debt securities issued in this manner will have the same terms and conditions as the outstanding debt securities of that series, except for their original issue date and issue price, and will be consolidated with, and form a single series with, the previously outstanding debt securities of that series. In certain instances, additional debt securities of a series sold may be issued with a different CUSIP number from that assigned to previously issued debt securities of that issue.

We intend for the debt securities of each subordinated debt series to have such terms and conditions as will permit the subordinated debt securities that we issue and sell to investors to qualify as Tier 2 capital under the regulatory capital requirements for bank holding companies. As a result, the subordinated debt securities of each subordinated debt series will have a minimum term of five years, will be unsecured, will not have credit-sensitive features or other provisions that are inconsistent with safe and sound banking practice, and will have limited events of default and other provisions that will permit holders of the subordinated debt securities to accelerate payment of principal of, or interest on, any of the subordinated debt securities only upon the occurrence of any event other than our bankruptcy.

Terms and Conditions of Debt Securities to be Described in the Prospectus Supplement

The prospectus supplement relating to any debt securities of a series that we may offer will set forth the price or prices at which the debt securities will be offered to the public and the specific terms and conditions of the debt securities of that series to the extent such terms and conditions are not described in this prospectus. The prospectus supplement will set forth the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of a series being offered by means of such prospectus supplement and the price(s) (expressed as a percentage of the principal amount) at which the debt securities will be offered and sold to the public. Each series of debt securities will be established and its terms and conditions set by a supplemental indenture. These terms and

[Table of Contents](#)

conditions of the debt securities may include, without limitation, the following:

- the title and amount of the series of the debt securities and whether they are senior debt securities or subordinated debt securities;
- any limit on the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of such series that may be issued;
- if other than the principal amount of those debt securities, the portion of the principal amount payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity of the debt securities of the series;
- the maturity date or dates, or the method for determining the maturity date or dates, on which the principal of the debt securities of the series will be payable and any rights of extension;
- the rate or rates, which may be fixed or variable, or the method of determining the rate or rates, at which the debt securities of the series will bear interest, if any;
- the date or dates from which any interest will accrue on the debt securities of the series, the date or dates on which accrued interest will be payable and the regular related record dates for the payment of accrued interest;
- the place or places where payments of principal, interest or premium, if any, will be payable, where the debt securities of the series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, and where notices or demands to or upon us may be served;
- the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, and the other terms and conditions upon which, the debt securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at our option, if we are to have such an option;
- with respect to our subordinated debt securities, the terms of the subordination of those debt securities in the right of payment to our senior indebtedness;
- prepayment rights, if any, applicable to the debt securities of the series and any premium payable in connection with any such prepayment;
- our obligation, if any, to redeem, repay or purchase the debt securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provision or at the option of a holder of the debt securities, and the period or periods within which, or the date and dates on which, the price or prices at which, and the

other terms and conditions upon which, the debt securities will be redeemed, repaid or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to that obligation;

whether the amount of payments of principal of and premium, if any, or interest, if any, on the debt securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method, and the manner in which the amounts are to be determined;

[Table of Contents](#)

- affirmative, negative and, in the case of our senior debt securities, financial covenants applicable with respect to the debt securities of the series;
- any additions to, modifications of, or deletions from the terms of the debt securities of the series with respect to events of default, amendments, merger, consolidation and sale or covenants set forth in the indenture;
- whether the debt securities of the series will be issued in certificated or book-entry form;
- the denomination of the debt securities of the series, if other than \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof;
- if the debt securities of the series will be initially issuable in global form, the depository or its nominee with respect to the debt securities and the circumstances under which the global security may be registered for transfer or exchange in the name of a person other than the depository or its nominee;
- the conditions upon which definitive debt securities of the series will be issued to beneficial owners;
- the applicability, if any, of the discharge, defeasance and covenant defeasance provisions of the indenture to the debt securities of the series and any additional or different terms on which such debt securities may be discharged or defeased;
- whether the debt securities of the series can be converted into or exchanged for other securities of our Company, and the related terms and conditions;
- in the case of our subordinated debt securities, provisions relating to any modification of the subordination provisions of the subordinated debt securities of the series, which are described elsewhere in this prospectus;
- whether the debt securities of the series will be sold as part of units consisting of debt securities, common stock, preferred stock and/or warrants;
- any trustee, depository, authenticating agent, paying agent, transfer agent, registrar or other agent with respect to the debt securities of the series; and
- any other terms of the debt securities of the series not inconsistent with the provisions of its applicable indenture.

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to the debt securities of a particular series, the debt securities will not be listed on any securities exchange.

We may offer and sell our debt securities at a substantial discount below their stated principal amount. The debt securities sold on that basis may be original issue discount, or OID, securities, which means that less than the entire principal amount of the original issue discount securities will be payable upon declaration of acceleration of their maturity. Special federal income tax, accounting and other considerations applicable to original issue discount securities will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

[Table of Contents](#)

Any material federal income tax considerations applicable to any discounted debt securities or to debt securities issued at par that are treated as having been issued at a discount for federal income tax purposes are described in this prospectus and will be supplemented in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Special federal income tax, accounting and other considerations applicable to debt securities, the principal, premium, if any, or interest of which may be determined by reference to an index, formula or other method will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Except as may be otherwise set forth in the prospectus supplement by which we offer particular debt securities, the indentures do not contain any provisions that would limit our ability to incur indebtedness, including indebtedness senior to the debt securities, or that would afford holders of debt securities protection in the event of a highly leveraged or similar transaction involving our Company. The indentures do not contain specific provisions that would afford debt securityholders protection in the event of a change of control, although such provisions may be included in the terms and conditions of the debt securities of a series by means of the supplemental indenture establishing that series. You should refer to the applicable prospectus supplement for information with respect to the deletion, modification or addition of any of the events of default or covenants that may be included in the debt securities of a series that are described below, including any addition of a covenant or other provision providing event risk or similar protection.

For purposes of the descriptions under the heading “Description of Debt Securities,” “subsidiary” means a corporation, a partnership, business or statutory trust, or a limited liability company a majority of the outstanding voting equity securities or a majority of the voting membership or partnership interests or beneficial interests in a trust, as the case may be (collectively, referred to as “voting equity securities”), of which is owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by us or by one or more of our other subsidiaries. For the purposes of this definition, “voting equity securities” means securities having voting power for the election of directors, managers, managing partners or trustees, as the case may be, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of stock has voting power by reason of any contingency.

Interest and Interest Rates

In the applicable prospectus supplement, we will designate the debt securities of a series as either bearing interest at a fixed rate of interest or bearing interest at a floating rate of interest. Each debt security will begin to accrue interest from the date it is originally issued. Interest on each such debt security will be payable in arrears on the interest payment dates set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement and as otherwise described below and at maturity or, if earlier, the redemption date described below. Interest will be payable to the holder of record of the debt securities at the close of business on the record date for each interest payment date, which record dates will be specified in such prospectus supplement. As used in the indentures, the term "business day" means any day, other than a Saturday or Sunday, that is neither a legal holiday nor a day on which banking institutions are generally authorized or required by law or regulation to close in Dallas, Texas.

[Table of Contents](#)

Fixed Rate Debt Securities

If a series of debt securities being offered pursuant to this prospectus will bear interest at a fixed rate of interest, the debt securities of that series will bear interest at the annual interest rate specified on the cover page of the applicable prospectus supplement. Interest on those debt securities will be payable semi-annually in arrears on the interest payment dates for those debt securities or at such other intervals as are established in the terms of the debt securities of a particular series. If the maturity date, any redemption date or an interest payment date is not a business day, we will pay principal, premium, if any, and interest on the next business day, and no interest will accrue on, from and after the maturity date, the redemption date or that interest payment date. Interest on the fixed rate debt securities will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

Floating Rate Debt Securities

If a series of debt securities being offered will bear interest at a floating rate of interest, the debt securities of that series will bear interest during each relevant interest period at the rate determined as set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement and as otherwise set forth below. Each floating rate debt security will have an interest rate basis or formula.

The floating rate debt securities may have a maximum or minimum rate limitation. In no event, however, will the rate of interest on the debt securities be higher than the maximum rate of interest permitted by New York law as that law may be modified by United States law of general application.

The trustee or another bank or investment banking firm designated by us will act as the calculation agent for floating rate debt securities and, in that capacity, will compute the interest accruing on the debt securities unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement.

If any interest payment date for the debt securities of a series bearing interest at a floating rate (other than the maturity date or a redemption date) would otherwise be a day that is not a business day, then the interest payment date will be postponed to the following date which is a business day, unless that business day falls in the next succeeding calendar month, in which case the interest payment date will be the immediately preceding business day. If the maturity date of such debt securities (or a tax or other redemption date, if earlier than the stated maturity date for those debt securities) falls on a day which is not a business day, then we will make the required payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest on the following day which is a business day, as if it were made on the date the payment was due. Interest will not accrue on, from or after the stated maturity date (or any tax or other redemption date) as a result of this delayed payment.

The calculation agent will reset the rate of interest on the debt securities of a series bearing interest at a floating rate on each interest payment date. If any of the interest reset dates for the debt securities is not a business day, that interest reset date will be postponed to the next

[Table of Contents](#)

succeeding business day, unless that day is in the next succeeding calendar month, in which case the interest reset date will be the immediately preceding business day. The interest rate set for the debt securities on a particular interest reset date will remain in effect during the interest period commencing on that interest reset date. Each interest period will be the period from and including the interest reset date to but excluding the next interest reset date or until the maturity date of the debt securities, as the case may be. The interest reset date relating to each interest period will be determined as set forth in the terms of each series of floating rate debt securities.

All percentages resulting from any calculation will be rounded to the nearest one hundred-thousandth of a percentage point, with five one-millionths of a percentage point rounded upward. Dollar amounts used in any calculation will be rounded to the nearest cent (with one-half cent being rounded upward).

The calculation agent will promptly notify the trustee of each determination of the interest rate, as well as of the interest period, the amount of interest expected to accrue for that interest period and the interest payment date related to each interest reset date, as soon as such information becomes available. The trustee will make such information available to the holders of the relevant debt securities upon request. The calculation agent's determination of any interest rate and its calculation of the amount of interest for any interest period will be final and binding in the absence of a manifest error.

So long as floating rate debt securities of a series are outstanding, we will at all times maintain a calculation agent as to the debt securities of that series. We will appoint a bank, trust company, investment banking firm or other financial institution to act as the successor calculation agent to the trustee or any of its successors in that capacity in the event that:

- any calculation agent is unable or unwilling to act;
- any calculation agent fails duly to establish the floating interest rate for a series of floating rate debt securities; or
- we propose to remove any calculation agent.

Ranking

Senior Debt Securities

The senior debt securities of a series that we issue under the senior debt indenture will rank equally in right of payment of the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on such senior debt securities with all of our other existing and future unsecured and unsubordinated debt, including the senior debt securities of any other series.

Subordinated Debt Securities

As provided in the subordinated debt indenture and as described in the prospectus supplement describing the applicable series of subordinated debt securities, the payment of the principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the subordinated debt securities of any series, including amounts payable on any redemption or repurchase in accordance with the terms of

[Table of Contents](#)

such subordinated debt securities, will be subordinated to the extent and in the manner provided in the terms of the subordinated debt securities of a series in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all of our senior indebtedness, which is defined below. If there is a distribution to our creditors in a liquidation or winding up of our Company, or in a bankruptcy, reorganization, insolvency, receivership or similar proceeding relating to our Company, the holders of senior debt will first be entitled to receive payment in full of all amounts due on the senior debt (or provision shall be made for such payment in cash) before any payments may be made on the subordinated debt securities. Because of this subordination, holders of our senior debt securities and general creditors of our Company may recover more of the indebtedness of our Company owed to them, ratably, than will the holders of subordinated debt securities in the event of a distribution of assets upon bankruptcy, reorganization, insolvency, receivership or similar proceeding, or a liquidation, termination or winding up of our Company.

The supplemental indenture, board resolution or board resolution and related officers' certificate establishing a series of subordinated debt securities will set forth the terms and conditions under which, if any, we will not be permitted to pay some or all of the principal of or premium, if any, or interest on the subordinated debt securities of a series upon the occurrence of an event of default or other circumstances arising under or with respect to senior indebtedness of our Company, including senior debt securities.

As discussed above, the indentures may place no limitation on the amount of indebtedness that we may incur, and the subordinated debt indenture will not limit the amount of debt senior to the subordinated debt securities of any series that we may incur. We expect to incur from time to time additional indebtedness constituting senior debt, which may include indebtedness that is senior to the subordinated debt securities but subordinate to our other obligations.

"Senior indebtedness" under the subordinated debt indenture means the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest, including interest accruing after the commencement of any bankruptcy proceeding relating to our Company, on, or substantially similar payments we will make in respect of the following categories of indebtedness, whether that indebtedness was outstanding at the date of execution of the subordinated debt indenture or thereafter incurred, created or assumed:

- our other indebtedness evidenced by notes, debentures, or bonds or other securities, whether issued under the provisions of any indenture (including indentures other than the senior debt indenture), fiscal agency agreement, debenture or note purchase agreement or other agreement, including the senior debt securities that may be offered by means of this prospectus and one or more prospectus supplements;
- our indebtedness for money borrowed or represented by purchase-money obligations, as defined below;
- our obligations as lessee under leases of property whether made as part of a sale and leaseback transaction to which we are a party or otherwise;

[Table of Contents](#)

- indebtedness, obligations and liabilities of others in respect of which we are liable contingently or otherwise to pay or advance money or property or as guarantor, endorser or otherwise or which we have agreed to purchase or otherwise acquire and indebtedness of partnerships and joint ventures that is included in our consolidated financial statements;
- reimbursement and other obligations relating to letters of credit, bankers' acceptances and similar obligations;
- obligations under various hedging and similar arrangements and agreements, including interest rate and currency hedging agreements and swap and nonswap forward agreements;
- all our obligations issued or assumed as the deferred purchase price of property or services other than trade accounts payable and accrued liabilities arising in the ordinary course of business; and
- deferrals, renewals or extensions of any of the indebtedness or obligations described in the eight clauses above.

However, "senior indebtedness" excludes:

- any indebtedness, obligation or liability referred to in the nine clauses above as to which, in the instrument creating, governing or evidencing that indebtedness, obligation or liability, it is expressly provided that such indebtedness, obligation or liability is not senior in right of payment to, is junior in right of payment to, or ranks equally in right of payment with, other specified types of indebtedness, obligations and liabilities of our Company, including subordinated debt securities of one or more series;

any indebtedness, obligation or liability that is subordinated to other of our indebtedness, obligations and liabilities to substantially the same extent as or to a greater extent than the subordinated debt securities are subordinated; and

the subordinated debt securities issued pursuant to the subordinated debt indenture and our outstanding junior subordinated indentures and, unless expressly provided in the terms thereof, any of our indebtedness to our subsidiaries.

As used above, the term “purchase-money obligations” means indebtedness, obligations evidenced by a note, debenture, bond or other instrument, whether or not secured by a lien or other security interest issued to evidence the obligation to pay or a guarantee of the payment of, and any deferred obligation for the payment of, the purchase price of property but excluding indebtedness or obligations for which recourse is limited to the property purchased, issued or assumed as all or a part of the consideration for the acquisition of property or services, whether by purchase, merger, consolidation or otherwise, but does not include any trade accounts payable.

[Table of Contents](#)

The applicable prospectus supplement and supplemental indenture may further describe the provisions, if any, applicable to the subordination of the subordinated debt securities of a particular series. The applicable prospectus supplement will describe as of a recent date the approximate amount of our senior debt outstanding as to which the subordinated debt securities of that series will be subordinated.

Structural Subordination

Because our Company is a holding company, our cash flows and consequent ability to service our obligations, including both our senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities, are dependent on dividends, distributions and other payments of earnings and other funds by our subsidiaries, particularly Veritex Community Bank, to us. The payment of dividends and other distributions by our subsidiaries is contingent on their earnings and is subject to the requirements of federal banking regulations and other restrictions. For example, various banking laws applicable to Veritex Community Bank limit the payment of dividends and other distributions by Veritex Community Bank to us, and may, therefore, limit our ability to pay accrued interest owing on our outstanding senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities on any interest payment date or the principal of such senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities at their maturity. In addition, the debt securities will be structurally subordinated to all indebtedness and other liabilities of the our subsidiaries, because any right of our Company to receive any assets of its subsidiaries upon their liquidation or reorganization, and the consequent right of the holders of the debt securities to participate in those assets, will be effectively subordinated to the claims of that subsidiary’s secured and unsecured creditors. If our Company itself is recognized as a creditor of that subsidiary, our claims would still be subordinate to any security interest in the assets of that subsidiary and any indebtedness of that subsidiary senior to that held by our Company. Claims from creditors (other than us) on our subsidiaries may include long-term and medium-term debt and substantial obligations related to deposit liabilities, federal funds purchased, securities sold under repurchase agreements, other short-term borrowings and trade payables. Any capital loans that we make to Veritex Community Bank would be subordinate in right of payment to deposits and to other indebtedness of Veritex Community Bank.

Unsecured Obligations

Our senior debt securities and subordinated debt securities will be unsecured.

Conversion or Exchange of Debt Securities

The applicable prospectus supplement will describe the terms, if any, on which a series of debt securities may be converted into or exchanged for other of our securities. These terms will include whether conversion or exchange will be mandatory, at our option or at the option of the holder. We will also describe in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to any such convertible or exchangeable debt securities how we will calculate the amount or number of our other securities that holders of debt securities would receive if they were to convert or exchange their debt securities, the conversion price or exchange ratio and other terms related to conversion or exchange and any antidilution protections.

[Table of Contents](#)

Redemption of Securities

We may redeem the debt securities, in whole or in part, at the prescribed redemption price, at the times and on the terms described in the applicable prospectus supplement. If we exercise that redemption option, we will notify the trustee and the registrar of the redemption date and of the principal amount of debt securities of the series to be redeemed.

Notice of redemption will be given to each holder of the debt securities to be redeemed at their addresses, as shown on the security register, at least 60 days prior to the date set for such redemption. The notice will set forth: the redemption date; the price at which the debt securities will be redeemed; if less than all of the outstanding debt securities of such series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the respective principal amounts) of the particular debt securities to be redeemed; the place or places where such debt securities maturing after the redemption date are to be surrendered for payment of the price at which such debt securities will be redeemed; whether the redemption is for a sinking fund; the CUSIP number applicable to the debt securities to be redeemed; and if all or a portion of the redemption price is to be paid in cash or common stock or other securities or property, a statement whether the Company has elected to pay the redemption price in cash or common stock or other securities and, if applicable, the portion of such payment.

At or prior to the opening of business on the redemption date, we will deposit or cause to be deposited with the trustee or with a paying agent (or, if we are acting as our own paying agent with respect to the debt securities being redeemed, we will segregate and hold in trust as provided in the indenture) an amount of money sufficient to pay the aggregate redemption price of all of the debt securities or the part thereof to be redeemed on that date. On the redemption date, the price at which the debt securities will be redeemed will become due and payable upon all of the debt securities to be redeemed, and

interest, if any, on the debt securities to be redeemed will cease to accrue on and after that date. Upon surrender of any such debt securities for redemption, we will pay those debt securities surrendered at the price set for such redemption.

If we elect to redeem debt securities, we will be required to notify the trustee of the aggregate principal amount of debt securities to be redeemed and the redemption date. If fewer than all the debt securities are to be redeemed, the trustee is required to select the debt securities to be redeemed proportionately, by lot or in a manner it deems fair and appropriate or as required by law. Any of the debt securities to be redeemed only in part must be surrendered at the office or agency established by us for such purpose, and we will execute, and the trustee will authenticate and deliver to you without service charge, new debt securities of the same series, containing identical terms and conditions, of any authorized denominations as requested by you, in an aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the debt securities you surrender.

Payment and Paying and Transfer Agent

We will make all payments of principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the debt securities of each series offered pursuant to this prospectus to the depository for the debt securities of that series, which will be The Depository Trust Company, or DTC, for so long as those debt securities remain in book-entry form. If certificated securities are issued as to the debt securities of any series, we will pay the principal of and the premium, if any, and interest on

[Table of Contents](#)

those debt securities by wire transfer in accordance with the instructions given to us by the holders of those debt securities. Except as otherwise noted below, all other payments with respect to certificated debt securities will be made at the office or agency of the paying agent within Dallas, Texas unless we elect to make interest payments by check mailed to the holders at their address set forth in the register of holders.

Under the terms of the indentures, we and the trustee will treat the registered holder of such debt securities (i.e., DTC (or its nominee)) as the owner thereof for all purposes, including the right to receive payments and for all other purposes. Consequently, neither we nor the trustee or any of our respective agents has or will have any responsibility or liability for:

- any aspects of the records of DTC or any direct or indirect participant therein relating to or payments made on account of any such debt securities, any such payments made by DTC or any direct or indirect participant therein, or maintaining, supervising or reviewing the records of DTC or any direct or indirect participant therein relating to or payments made on account of any such debt securities; or
- DTC or any direct or indirect participant therein. Payments by participants to the beneficial owners of our debt securities held through participants are the responsibility of such participants, as is now the case with securities held for the accounts of customers registered in “street name.”

We will maintain an office or agency in Dallas, Texas, where debt securities of each series may be presented for registration of transfer or for exchange and an office or agency where such debt securities may be presented and surrendered for payment. U.S. Bank National Association, the trustee under the indentures, will also be the registrar and paying agent for the debt securities of each series unless it resigns from such position or it is otherwise replaced in such capacities as provided in the applicable indentures. Holders will not have to pay any service charge for any registration of transfer or exchange of debt securities, but we may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection with such registration of transfer.

Same-Day Settlement

The debt securities will trade in the same-day funds settlement system in the United States until maturity. Purchases of debt securities in secondary market trading must be settled in immediately available funds. See “Book Entry Issuance.”

Denomination, Payment, Registration and Transfer

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will issue the debt securities of a series in denominations of \$1,000 or integral multiples of \$1,000.

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will pay the principal of, and applicable premium, if any, and interest on the debt securities of any series at the corporate trust office of the trustee, the address of which will be stated in the applicable prospectus supplement. At our option, we may pay interest by check mailed to the address of the person entitled to the interest payment as it appears in the register for the applicable debt securities or by wire transfer of funds to that person at an account maintained within the United States.

[Table of Contents](#)

Any defaulted interest, which means interest not punctually paid or duly provided for on any interest payment date with respect to a debt security, will immediately cease to be payable to the registered holder on the applicable regular record date by virtue of his having been the registered holder on such date. We may pay defaulted interest either to the person in whose name the debt security is registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of the defaulted interest to be fixed by the trustee, notice of which is to be given to the holder of the debt security not less than ten days before the special record date, or at any time in any other lawful manner, all as more completely described in the indenture or supplemental indenture.

Subject to limitations imposed upon debt securities issued in book-entry form, the holder may exchange debt securities of any series for other debt securities of the same series and of a like aggregate principal amount and tenor but in different, authorized denominations upon surrender of the debt securities at the corporate trust office of the applicable trustee. In addition, subject to limitations imposed upon debt securities issued in book-entry form, the holder may surrender debt securities of any series for registration of transfer or exchange at the corporate trust office of the applicable trustee. Every debt security surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange must be duly endorsed or accompanied by a written instrument of transfer. No service charge will be imposed for any registration of transfer or exchange of any debt securities, but we may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge payable in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of any debt securities. If the applicable prospectus supplement refers

to any transfer agent in addition to the applicable trustee, which additional transfer agent is initially designated by us with respect to any series of debt securities, we may at any time rescind the designation of that transfer agent or approve a change in the location through which any transfer agent acts, except that we will be required to maintain a transfer agent in each place of payment for that series of debt securities. We may at any time designate additional transfer agents with respect to any series of debt securities.

If we redeem the debt securities of any series, neither we nor any trustee will be required to:

- issue, register the transfer of, or exchange debt securities of any series during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of debt securities of that series to be redeemed and ending at the close of business on the day of mailing of the relevant notice of redemption;
- register the transfer of, or exchange any debt security, or portion of any debt security, called for redemption, except the unredeemed portion of any debt security being redeemed in part; or
- issue, register the transfer of, or exchange any debt security that has been surrendered for repayment at the option of the holder, except the portion, if any, of the debt security not to be repaid.

[Table of Contents](#)

Global Securities

We may issue the debt securities of a series in whole or in part in the form of one or more global securities to be deposited with, or on behalf of, a depository or with a nominee for a depository identified in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to that series. We will issue global securities in registered form and in either temporary or permanent form. The specific terms of the depository arrangement with respect to a series of debt securities will be described in the prospectus supplement relating to that series.

Our obligations with respect to the debt securities of any series, as well as the obligations of the applicable trustee with respect to the debt securities of such series, run only to persons who are registered holders of debt securities. For example, once we make payment to the registered holder, we have no further responsibility for that payment even if the recipient is legally required to pass the payment along to an individual investor but fails to do so. As an indirect holder, an investor's rights relating to a global security will be governed by the account rules of the investor's financial institution and of the depository and/or participant of the depository, as well as general laws relating to transfers of debt securities.

An investor should be aware that when debt securities are issued in the form of global securities:

- the investor cannot have a note or certificate representing his or her debt securities registered in his or her own name;
- the investor cannot receive physical certificates for his or her debt securities unless the conditions for issuance of physical certification are met;
- the investor must look to his or her bank or brokerage firm or related DTC participant for payments on the debt securities and protection of his or her legal rights relating to the debt securities;
- the investor may not be able to sell interests in the debt securities to some insurance or other institutions that are required by law to hold the physical certificates of debt that they own;
- the depository's policies will govern payments, transfers, exchanges and other matters relating to the investor's interest in the global security; and
- the depository will usually require that interests in a global security be purchased or sold within its system and settled using same-day funds.

The prospectus supplement for a series of debt securities will list the special situations, if any, in which a global security will be exchanged for physical certificates representing debt securities represented by the global securities. After that exchange, the investor may choose whether to hold debt securities directly or indirectly through an account at the investor's bank or brokerage firm. In that event, investors must consult their banks or brokers to find out how to have their interests in debt securities transferred to their own names so that they may become

[Table of Contents](#)

direct holders. When a global security is exchanged for physical certificates, the depository, and not us or one of the trustees, is responsible for deciding the names of the institutions that will be the initial direct holders of the debt securities represented by the global security.

Merger, Consolidation or Sale of Assets

We will not be permitted to consolidate with or merge into any other entity, or sell, lease, transfer or convey all or substantially all of our properties and assets, either in one transaction or a series of transactions, to any other entity and no other entity will consolidate with or merge into us, or sell, lease, transfer or convey all or substantially all of its properties and assets to us unless:

(1) either:

- our Company is the continuing entity; or
- the successor entity, if other than our Company, formed by or resulting from any consolidation or merger, or which has received the transfer of our properties and assets, expressly assumes payment of the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest on all of the outstanding debt securities and

the due and punctual performance and observance of all of the covenants and conditions contained in the applicable indenture; and

(2) immediately after giving effect to the transaction and treating any indebtedness that becomes our obligation as a result of that transaction as having been incurred by us at the time of the transaction, no event of default under the applicable indenture, and no event which, after notice, the lapse of time or both, would become an event of default will have occurred and be continuing.

The conditions described in (1) and (2) above would not apply to the direct or indirect transfer of the stock, assets or liabilities of any of our subsidiaries to another of our direct or indirect subsidiaries.

Except as provided in this prospectus or as may otherwise be provided in the applicable prospectus supplement, the applicable indenture and the terms of the debt securities will not contain any event risk or similar covenants that are intended to afford protection to holders of any debt securities in the event of a merger, a highly leveraged transaction or other significant corporate event involving us or our subsidiaries, whether or not resulting in a change of control, which may adversely affect holders of the debt securities.

Additional Covenants and/or Modifications to the Covenant Described Above

Any covenants of our Company in addition to, and/or modifications to, the covenant relating to mergers, consolidations and sales of assets described above with respect to any series of debt securities, including any covenants relating to limitations on incurrence of indebtedness or incurrence of liens or any affirmative covenants, other negative covenants or financial covenants, will be set forth in the indenture and described in the prospectus supplement relating to that series of debt securities.

[Table of Contents](#)

Unless the applicable prospectus supplement indicates otherwise, the indentures do not contain a restrictive covenant on the incurrence of debt of the type described above, nor do they contain any other provision which restricts us from, among other things:

- incurring or becoming liable on any secured or unsecured senior or subordinated indebtedness or general obligations; or
- paying dividends or making other distributions on our capital stock; or
- purchasing or redeeming our capital stock; or
- creating any liens on our property for any purpose.

Events of Default; Right to Accelerate

Senior Debt Securities. Under the senior debt indenture, but subject to any modifications or deletions provided in any supplemental indenture or board resolution or board resolution and related officers' certificate with respect to or establishing the terms and conditions of the senior debt securities of any specific series, an event of default will occur with respect to the senior debt securities upon the occurrence of any of the following events:

- failure to pay any installment of interest payable on any senior debt security of the series for 30 days;
- failure to pay principal of, or premium, if any, on, any senior debt security of the series when due, whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration of acceleration of maturity or otherwise;
- default in making any sinking fund payment when due, for any senior debt security of the series;
- default in the performance or breach of any other covenant or warranty of our Company contained in the senior debt indenture, other than a covenant added to the senior debt indenture solely for the benefit of any other series of senior debt securities issued under that senior debt indenture, continuing for 90 days after written notice as provided in the senior debt indenture;
- the entry by a court having proper jurisdiction of a decree or order for relief in respect of us (or, in each case, any significant subsidiary of ours) in an involuntary case or proceeding under any bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar law or adjudging us bankrupt or insolvent or approving as properly filed a petition seeking our reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition or appointing a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee or similar official for us or of any substantial part of our property, or ordering our winding up or liquidation and such decree or order shall have continued unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days;

[Table of Contents](#)

- if we (or, in each case, any significant subsidiary of ours) commence a voluntary case or proceeding under any bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization law or to be adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent, or we consent to the entry of a decree or order for relief in an involuntary case or proceeding under any bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or similar law, to the commencing of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding or to the filing of any petition or appointment of, or taking possession by, a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee or similar official for us or of any substantial part of our property or any assignment for the benefit of our creditors or our taking of any action in furtherance of such action;
- default in the delivery of any shares of common stock or other securities or property when required to be delivered upon the conversion of, or the exchange of, any senior debt securities of a series and that default continues for a period of 10 days; or
- any other event of default as is described in the prospectus supplement relating to any series of senior debt securities being offered for sale.

If any bankruptcy or insolvency-related event of default described above occurs, the principal amount and interest on the senior debt securities will become immediately due and payable, subject to the broad equity powers of a federal bankruptcy court and the determination by that court of the nature and status of the payment claims of the holders of the senior debt securities. If any other event of default described above or established as a term of the senior debt securities of a series occurs and is continuing, the senior debt trustee or the holders of 25% of the aggregate principal amount of the outstanding senior debt securities of that series may accelerate the maturity of the outstanding senior debt securities of that series and declare the principal of and accrued and unpaid interest on such senior debt securities to be immediately due and payable. Upon such a declaration, the principal of (or such lesser amount as may be provided for in the terms of the senior debt securities of that series) and all accrued and unpaid interest on such senior debt securities will become immediately due and payable upon notice of such declaration being given in writing to our Company and, if the acceleration is by the holders, the senior debt trustee. At any time after a declaration of acceleration with respect to the senior debt securities of a series has been made, but before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of outstanding senior debt securities of that series may rescind and annul the consequences of the event of default, but only if certain conditions have been satisfied.

Subordinated Debt Securities. Under the subordinated debt indenture, but subject to any modifications or deletions provided in any supplemental indenture or board resolution or board resolution and related officers' certificate with respect to any specific series of subordinated debt securities, an event of default will occur with respect to the subordinated debt securities upon the occurrence of any of the following events:

- failure to pay any installment of interest payable on any subordinated debt security of the series for 30 days;

[Table of Contents](#)

- failure to pay principal of, or premium, if any, on, any subordinated debt security of the series when due, whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration of acceleration of maturity or otherwise;
- default in making any sinking fund payment when due, for any subordinated debt security of the series;
- default in the performance or breach of any other covenant or warranty of our Company contained in the subordinated debt indenture, other than a covenant added to the subordinated debt indenture solely for the benefit of any other series of subordinated debt securities issued under that subordinated debt indenture, continuing for 90 days after written notice as provided in the subordinated debt indenture;
- the entry of a decree or order for relief in respect of our Company by a court having jurisdiction in the premises in an involuntary proceeding under Chapter 7 (liquidation) or Chapter 11 (reorganization) of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code as now or hereafter in effect, and such decree or order shall have continued unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days;
- if we commence a bankruptcy or insolvency proceeding or consent to the entry of an order in an involuntary proceeding under Chapter 7 (liquidation) or Chapter 11 (reorganization) of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code as now or hereafter in effect; or
- such other events of default as are described in the prospectus supplement relating to any series of subordinated debt securities being offered for sale.

If an event of default based on the entry of a decree or order for relief in a bankruptcy or insolvency proceeding or the commencement by us of a bankruptcy or insolvency proceeding or our consent to the entry of an order in an involuntary bankruptcy or insolvency proceeding that adjudicates us as being insolvent occurs, the principal amount and interest on the subordinated debt securities shall become immediately due and payable, subject to the broad equity powers of a federal bankruptcy court and the determination by that court of the nature and status of the payment claims of the holders of the subordinated debt securities. Unless the terms of the subordinated debt securities of a series provide otherwise, if any non-insolvency event of default described above or established as a term of the subordinated debt securities of a series occurs and is continuing, the subordinated debt trustee or the holders of 25% of the aggregate principal amount of the outstanding subordinated debt securities of that series may accelerate the maturity of the outstanding subordinated debt securities of that series and declare the principal of and accrued and unpaid interest on such subordinated debt securities to be immediately due and payable. Upon such a declaration, the principal of (or such lesser amount as may be provided for in the terms of the subordinated debt securities of that series) and all accrued and unpaid interest on such subordinated debt securities will become immediately due and payable upon notice of such declaration being given in writing to our Company and, if the acceleration is by the holders, the subordinated debt trustee. At any time after a declaration of acceleration with respect to the subordinated debt securities of a series has been made, but before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of outstanding subordinated debt securities of that series may rescind and annul the consequences of the event of default, but only if certain conditions have been satisfied.

[Table of Contents](#)

We may offer subordinated debt securities of a series that we intend to qualify as "Tier 2 capital" under the federal regulatory rules and guidelines for bank holding company capital. For such subordinated debt securities to so qualify as "Tier 2 capital," the maturity of such subordinated debt securities may not be accelerated upon the occurrence and continuation of an event of default unless the event of default is one based on the entry of a decree or order for relief in a bankruptcy or insolvency proceeding or the commencement by us of a bankruptcy or insolvency proceeding or our consent to the entry of an order in an involuntary bankruptcy or insolvency proceeding as discussed above. Notwithstanding the discussion appearing above of the rights of the subordinated debt trustee or holders of subordinated debt securities to accelerate the maturity of such subordinated debt securities upon the occurrence of a non-insolvency event of default, the terms of the subordinated debt securities of a series intended to qualify as "Tier 2 capital" will expressly limit the rights of the subordinated debt trustee and the holders of the subordinated debt securities of such series to declare an acceleration of the maturity of such subordinated debt securities upon the occurrence of a non-insolvency default and such limitation will be described in any prospectus supplement by which we offer subordinated debt securities of that series for sale. As a consequence of that limitation, with respect to our subordinated debt securities of a series intended to qualify as "Tier 2 capital," neither the trustee nor the holders of the subordinated debt securities of any series or any group of holders of any portion of the outstanding subordinated debt securities of one or more series will have the right to accelerate the subordinated debt securities of any series in the event of a default in the payment of principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, the subordinated debt securities of that series or as a result of our nonperformance of any other covenant applicable to or obligation arising under the terms of the subordinated debt securities of that series or the subordinated debt indenture. If we default in our obligation to pay any interest on the subordinated debt securities when due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days,

or if we default in our obligation to pay the principal amount due upon maturity, or if we breach any covenant or agreement contained in the subordinated debt indenture and that default continues for any grace period, then the subordinated debt trustee may, subject to certain limitations and conditions, seek to enforce its rights and the rights of the holders of subordinated debt securities of the performance of any covenant or agreement in the indenture. As a result of such limitations on the rights and remedies of the holders of subordinated debt securities of a series intended to qualify as “Tier 2 capital”, the holders of our senior debt securities, holders of our other senior indebtedness, holders of our subordinated debt securities of a series not intended to qualify as “Tier 2 capital” and our general creditors would be able to act to recover amounts owing to them prior to the holders of our subordinated debt securities.

Collection of Indebtedness

If an event of default relating to our failure to pay interest or principal, to make a sinking fund or analogous payment occurs with respect to the debt securities of a series issued under an indenture, we must pay to the applicable trustee for the benefit of the holders of the affected debt securities the amount of the principal of, and premium, if any, and accrued and unpaid interest on, such debt securities and, to the extent legally enforceable, interest on any such overdue amounts at the rate determined as prescribed in the terms of such debt securities. If we fail to pay such amounts, the applicable trustee may institute a suit against us to collect the amounts due and

[Table of Contents](#)

payable. If the debt securities as to which such a failure of payment occurs are subordinated debt securities intended to qualify as “Tier 2 capital,” the amounts we would be required to pay to the subordinated debt trustee upon such a failure of payment or performance would not include any principal, premium or interest that would not be due without the maturity of such subordinated debt securities being accelerated.

Trustee Action

The indentures provide that, subject to the duty of the trustee upon the occurrence of an event of default to act with the required standard of care, the trustee will be under no obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under the applicable indenture at the request or direction of any of the holders of debt securities unless such holders shall have offered to the trustee indemnity or security reasonably satisfactory to the trustee against the costs, expenses and liabilities that may be incurred by it in complying with such request or direction. Subject to certain provisions, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series will have the right to direct the time, method, and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the trustee or exercising any trust or power conferred on the trustee with respect to the subject debt securities.

Limitations on Suits by Holders

No holder of debt securities shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to the indentures, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy under the indentures, unless:

- such holder has previously given written notice to the trustee of a continuing event of default with respect to the applicable debt securities;
- the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the applicable debt securities shall have made written request to the trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such event of default in its own name as trustee under the applicable indenture;
- such holder or holders have offered to the trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses, and liabilities to be incurred in complying with such request;
- the trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request, and offer of security or indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and
- no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the trustee during such 60-day period by the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities.

In any event, the applicable indenture provides that no one or more of such holders of the debt securities of a series will have any right under such indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other holder of debt securities of any series issued under such indenture, or to obtain priority or preference over any of the other holders or to enforce any right under such indenture, except in the manner provided in the indenture and for the equal and ratable benefit of all holders of debt securities issued under that indenture.

[Table of Contents](#)

Waiver

Each indenture provides that the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series issued under that indenture may waive any past default with respect to that series and its consequences, except a default:

- in the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on any debt security of that series, or
- in respect of a covenant or provision contained in that indenture that, by the terms of the indenture, cannot be modified or amended without the consent of each affected holder of an outstanding debt security.

Notice

The trustee will be required to give notice to the holders of the applicable debt securities within 90 days of a default under the applicable indenture unless the default has been cured or waived; but the trustee may withhold notice of any default, except a default in the payment of the principal of, or

premium, if any, or interest on the debt securities or in the payment of any sinking fund installment in respect of the debt securities, if specified responsible officers of the trustee consider the withholding to be in the interest of the holders.

The holders of debt securities of any series may not institute any proceedings, judicial or otherwise, with respect to the applicable indenture or for any remedy under such indenture, except in the case of failure of the applicable trustee, for 60 days, to act after the trustee has received a written request to institute proceedings in respect of an event of default from the holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series, as well as an offer of indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the trustee, and provided that no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the trustee during such 60-day period by the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of that series. However, any holder of debt securities is not prohibited from instituting suit for the enforcement of payment of the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest on the debt securities at their respective due dates.

Subject to the trustee's duties in case of default, no trustee will be under any obligation to exercise any of its rights or powers under the indenture at the request or direction of any holders of debt securities of a series then outstanding under the applicable indenture unless the holders offer to the trustee reasonable security or indemnity. Subject to such provisions for the indemnification of the trustee, the holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series issued under the indenture will have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the applicable trustee or of the applicable trustee exercising any trust or power conferred upon the trustee. A trustee may refuse, however, to follow any direction that is in conflict with any law or the indenture that may involve the trustee in personal liability or may be unduly prejudicial to the holders of debt securities of that series not joining in the direction.

[Table of Contents](#)

Within 180 days after the end of each fiscal year, we will be required to deliver to each trustee a certificate, signed by one of several specified officers, stating whether or not that officer has knowledge of any default under the indenture and, if so, specifying each default and the nature and status of the default.

Modification of an Indenture

Except as otherwise specifically provided in the applicable indenture, with the consent of the holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of all outstanding debt securities issued under the indenture that are affected by the modification or amendment, we may enter into supplemental indentures with the trustee for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of the indenture or of modifying in any manner the rights of the holders of debt securities issued under the indenture. However, no modification or amendment may, without the consent of the holder of each debt security affected by the modification or amendment:

- except as described in the prospectus supplement relating to such debt security;
- extend the stated maturity of the principal of, or any installment of interest, or the premium, if any, on, any debt security;
- reduce the principal amount of, or the rate at which interest accrues under, amount of interest on, or change the manner of calculating the rate, or any premium payable on redemption of, any debt security, or reduce the amount of principal of an original issue discount security that would be due and payable upon declaration of acceleration of its maturity or would be provable in bankruptcy, or adversely affect any right of repayment of the holder of any debt security;
- extend the time of payment of interest on any debt security;
- change any of the conversion, exchange or redemption provisions of any debt security;
- change the place of payment, or the coin or currency for payment, of principal of, or premium, if any, including any amount in respect of original issue discount or interest on any debt security;
- impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any payment on or with respect to any debt security or for the conversion or exchange of any debt security in accordance with its terms;
- modify the ranking or priority of the securities;
- reduce the percentage of outstanding debt securities of any series necessary to modify or amend the indenture, to waive compliance with specific provisions of or certain defaults and consequences under the indenture, or to reduce the quorum or voting requirements set forth in the indenture; or

[Table of Contents](#)

- modify any of the provisions relating to the waiver of specific past defaults or compliance with specific covenants, except to increase the required percentage to effect that action or to provide that specific other provisions may not be modified or waived without the consent of the holder of that debt security.

The holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each series affected by any such modification or amendment will have the right to waive our compliance with specific covenants in the indenture.

We and the trustee may modify and amend the applicable indenture without the consent of the holders of debt securities for any of the following purposes:

- to evidence the succession of another person to us as obligor under the indenture;

- to add to our covenants for the benefit of the holders of all or any series of debt securities issued under the indenture or to surrender any right or power conferred upon us in the indenture;
- to add events of default for the benefit of the holders of all or any series of debt securities issued under the indenture;
- to add or change any provisions of the indenture to permit or facilitate the issuance of debt securities in uncertificated form issued under the indenture, provided that the action will not adversely affect the interests of the holders of the debt securities of any series in any material respect;
- to change or eliminate any provision of the indenture, if the change or elimination becomes effective only when there are no debt securities outstanding of any series created thereunder prior to the change or elimination that are entitled to the benefit of the changed or eliminated provision;
- to secure the debt securities of any series issued under the indenture;
- to establish the form or terms of debt securities of any series to be issued under the indenture;
- to provide for the acceptance of appointment by a successor trustee or facilitate the administration of the trusts under the indenture by more than one trustee;
- to cure any ambiguity or correct any inconsistency in the indenture provided that the cure or correction does not adversely affect the holders of the debt securities issued under the indenture;
- to supplement any of the provisions of the indenture to the extent necessary to permit or facilitate defeasance and discharge of any series of debt securities issued under the indenture, provided that the supplemental indenture does not adversely affect the interests

[Table of Contents](#)

- of the holders of the debt securities of any series issued under the indenture in any material respect;
- to make provisions with respect to the conversion or exchange terms and conditions applicable to the debt securities of any series issued under the indenture;
- to add to, delete from or revise the conditions, limitations or restrictions on issue, authentication and delivery of debt securities to be issued under the indenture in the future;
- to conform any provision in the indenture to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act;
- to make any change that does not adversely affect the legal rights under the indenture of any holder of debt securities of any series issued under the indenture, or
- in the case of any subordinated debt security, to make any change in the subordinated provisions that limits or terminates the benefits applicable to the holder of any senior debt.

In determining whether the holders of the requisite principal amount of outstanding debt securities of a series have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver under the indenture governing such series of debt securities or whether a quorum is present at a meeting of holders of debt securities of such series:

- the principal amount of an original issue discount security that is deemed to be outstanding will be the amount of the principal of that original issue discount security that would be due and payable as of the date of the determination upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity of that original issue discount security;
- the principal amount of an indexed security that is deemed outstanding will be the principal face amount of the indexed security at original issuance, unless otherwise provided with respect to the indexed security under the indenture; and
- debt securities owned by us or any other obligor upon the debt securities or any affiliate of us or of any other obligor will be disregarded.

Discharge, Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance

Discharge

We are permitted under each indenture to discharge specific obligations to holders of any series of debt securities issued under the indenture (1) that have not already been delivered to the applicable trustee for cancellation and (2) that either have become due and payable or will, within one year, become due and payable or scheduled for redemption, by irrevocably depositing with the applicable trustee, in trust, money or funds certified to be sufficient to pay when due, whether at maturity, upon redemption or otherwise, the principal of, and premium, if any, on and interest on the debt securities of one or more series.

[Table of Contents](#)

Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance

If the provisions in an indenture relating to defeasance and covenant defeasance are made applicable to the debt securities of any series issued under that indenture, we may elect either:

- defeasance, which means we elect to defease and be discharged from any and all obligations with respect to the debt securities of a series, except for the obligations to register the transfer or exchange of the debt securities, to replace temporary or mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen debt securities, to maintain an office or agency in respect of the debt securities and to hold moneys for payment in trust; or
- covenant defeasance, which means we elect to be released from our obligations with respect to the debt securities under specified sections of the indenture relating to covenants, as described in the applicable prospectus supplement and any omission to comply with our obligations will not constitute an event of default with respect to the debt securities being defeased; in either case upon the irrevocable deposit by us with the applicable trustee, in trust, of an amount, in currency or government obligations, or both, sufficient without reinvestment to make scheduled payments of the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest on such debt securities, when due, whether at maturity, upon redemption or otherwise, and any mandatory sinking fund or analogous payments.

A trust will only be permitted to be established under an indenture if, among other things:

- we have delivered to the applicable trustee an opinion of counsel, as specified in the applicable indenture, to the effect that the holders of the debt securities being defeased will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of the defeasance or covenant defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if the defeasance or covenant defeasance had not occurred, and the opinion of counsel, in the case of defeasance, will be required to refer to and be based upon a ruling of the Internal Revenue Service or a change in applicable U.S. federal income tax law occurring after the date of the indenture;
- no event of default or any event which after notice or lapse of time or both would be an event of default has occurred and is continuing;
- the defeasance or covenant defeasance will not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute an event of default under, the indenture, any senior debt or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound;
- certain other provisions set forth in the applicable indenture are met;
- we will have delivered to the trustee an officers' certificate and an opinion of counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent to the defeasance or covenant defeasance have been complied with; and

[Table of Contents](#)

- in the case of the subordinated debt indenture, no event or condition will exist that, pursuant to certain provisions described under “—Ranking—Subordinated Debt Securities,” would prevent the Company from making payments of principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the subordinated debt securities being defeased at the date of the irrevocable deposit referred to above.

In general, if we elect covenant defeasance with respect to any debt securities and payments on those debt securities are declared due and payable because of the occurrence of an event of default, the amount of money and/or government obligations on deposit with the applicable trustee would be sufficient to pay amounts due on those debt securities at the time of their stated maturity, but may not be sufficient to pay amounts due on those debt securities at the time of the acceleration resulting from the event of default. In that case, we would remain liable to make payment of the amounts due on the debt securities at the time of acceleration.

In the event we properly discharge and satisfy or effect a defeasance or covenant defeasance with respect to any subordinated debt securities, the subordination provisions of those subordinated debt securities will cease to cause those subordinated debt securities to be subordinate in right of payment to the payment in full of the senior indebtedness as defined for purposes of those subordinated debt securities. In such a circumstance, the funds or government obligations deposited in trust with the applicable trustee in connection with such discharge and satisfaction, defeasance or covenant defeasance may be applied to the payment of the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest on, the subordinated debt securities discharged and satisfied or the subject of defeasance or covenant defeasance prior to any or all of the senior indebtedness being paid in full.

A prospectus supplement by which we offer for sale debt securities of a particular series may further describe the provisions, if any, permitting defeasance or covenant defeasance, including any modifications to the provisions described above, with respect to the debt securities of or within such particular series.

Regarding the Trustee

U.S. Bank National Association, is the trustee under the indentures and, unless otherwise provided in a prospectus supplement relating to the offer of debt securities of a particular series, will also initially be the registrar and paying agent for each series of debt securities offered and sold pursuant to this prospectus. The trustee is a national banking association with offices in Dallas, Texas. From time to time, we may enter into banking or other relationships with the trustee or its affiliates.

[Table of Contents](#)

The trustee has two main roles under the indentures. First, the trustee can enforce your rights against us if an event of default occurs with respect to any debt securities. See “—Limitations on Suits” and “—Notice of Defaults” for certain information regarding the rights of the trustee upon the occurrence of an event of default. Second, the trustee performs certain administrative duties related to the debt securities of each series for us. The trustee is entitled, subject to the duty of the trustee during a default to act with the required standard of care, to be indemnified by the holders of the debt securities before proceeding to exercise any right or power under the applicable indenture at the request of those holders.

The trustee may resign or be removed as the trustee under an indenture, and a successor trustee may be appointed by us or by the holders holding a majority in aggregate principal amount of the debt securities outstanding under the applicable indenture to act with respect to all of the debt securities outstanding under the applicable indenture. If the trustee resigns or is removed as trustee under one of the indentures, it may continue to serve as the trustee under the other indenture unless it resigns or is removed as trustee under the other indenture as described above.

If two or more persons are acting as trustee with respect to different series of debt securities, each trustee will be a trustee of a trust under that indenture separate from the trust administered by any other such trustee as to a separate series of debt securities issued under that indenture. Except as otherwise indicated in this prospectus or the applicable prospectus supplement, a trustee may only take an action with respect to the debt securities of the particular series of debt securities for which it is trustee under an indenture.

Governing Law

The debt securities of each series and the indenture will be governed by, and construed in accordance with, the internal laws of the State of New York.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF COMMON STOCK

General

The following discussion summarizes some of the important rights of the holders of shares of our common stock. This discussion does not purport to be a complete description of these rights and may not contain all of the information regarding our common stock that is important to you. These rights can be determined in full only by reference to federal and state banking laws and regulations, the Texas Business Organizations Code, or the TBOC, and our certificate of formation and bylaws.

We are incorporated in the State of Texas. The rights of our shareholders are generally covered by Texas law and our certificate of formation and bylaws (each as amended and restated and in effect as of the completion of this offering). The terms of our capital stock are therefore subject to Texas law, including the TBOC, and the common and constitutional law of Texas. The following discussion describes the terms of our amended and restated certificate of formation and bylaws. Our amended and restated certificate of formation and bylaws have been filed with the SEC as Exhibit 3.1 and Exhibit 3.2 to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part, and we encourage you to read those documents.

Our amended and restated certificate of formation authorizes us to issue up to 75,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.01 per share, and 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$1.00 per share, of which 8,000 shares are designated as Series C preferred stock. The authorized but unissued shares of our capital stock will be available for future issuance without shareholder approval, unless otherwise required by applicable law or the rules of any applicable securities exchange.

Voting Rights

Subject to any special voting rights that may be given to any series of preferred stock that we may issue in the future, holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote per share in the election of directors and on all other matters submitted to a vote of our shareholders. Shareholders are not entitled to cumulate their votes with respect to the election of directors. Directors are elected by a plurality of the votes cast.

Dividend Rights

Holders of our common stock are entitled to dividends when, as and if declared by our board of directors out of funds legally available therefor.

Liquidation Rights

Upon any voluntary or involuntary liquidation, dissolution or winding up of our affairs, all shares of our common stock will be entitled to share equally in all remaining assets after the holders of shares of preferred stock or other senior securities have received the liquidation preference of their shares plus any declared but unpaid dividends, if any, and after all other indebtedness has been retired.

[Table of Contents](#)

Other

Our common stock has no preemptive or conversion rights and is not entitled to the benefits of any redemption or sinking fund provision.

Listing

Our common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Global Market under the symbol "VBTX."

Transfer Agent and Registrar

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company, whose address is 17 Battery Place, 8th Floor, New York NY 10004.

Business Combinations under Texas Law

A number of provisions of Texas law, our certificate of formation and our bylaws could have an anti-takeover effect and make more difficult the acquisition of the Company by means of a tender offer, a proxy contest or otherwise and the removal of incumbent directors. These provisions are intended to discourage coercive takeover practices and inadequate takeover bids and to encourage persons seeking to acquire control of us to negotiate first with our board of directors.

We are subject to the provisions of Title 2, Chapter 21, Subchapter M of the TBOC, or the Texas Business Combination Law, which provides that a Texas corporation may not engage in specified types of business combinations, including mergers, consolidations and asset sales, with a person, or an affiliate or associate of that person, who is an “affiliated shareholder.” For purposes of this law, an “affiliated shareholder” is generally defined as the holder of 20% or more of the corporation’s voting shares, for a period of three years from the date that person became an affiliated shareholder. The law’s prohibitions do not apply if:

- the business combination or the acquisition of shares by the affiliated shareholder was approved by the board of directors of the corporation before the affiliated shareholder became an affiliated shareholder; or
- the business combination was approved by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least two-thirds of the outstanding voting shares of the corporation not beneficially owned by the affiliated shareholder, at a meeting of shareholders called for that purpose, not less than six months after the affiliated shareholder became an affiliated shareholder.

We have more than 100 shareholders and are considered to be an “issuing public corporation” for purposes of this law. The Texas Business Combination Law does not apply to the following:

- the business combination of an issuing public corporation: where the corporation’s original certificate of formation or bylaws contain a provision expressly electing not to be governed by the Texas Business Combination Law; or that adopts an amendment to its certificate of formation or bylaws, by the affirmative vote of the holders, other than

[Table of Contents](#)

affiliated shareholders, of at least two-thirds of the outstanding voting shares of the corporation, expressly electing not to be governed by the Texas Business Combination Law and so long as the amendment does not take effect for 18 months following the date of the vote and does not apply to a business combination with an affiliated shareholder who became affiliated on or before the effective date of the amendment;

- a business combination of an issuing public corporation with an affiliated shareholder that became an affiliated shareholder inadvertently, if the affiliated shareholder divests itself, as soon as possible, of enough shares to no longer be an affiliated shareholder and would not at any time within the three- year period preceding the announcement of the business combination have been an affiliated shareholder but for the inadvertent acquisition;
- a business combination with an affiliated shareholder who became an affiliated shareholder through a transfer of shares by will or intestacy and continuously was an affiliated shareholder until the announcement date of the business combination; and
- a business combination of a corporation with its wholly owned Texas subsidiary if the subsidiary is not an affiliate or associate of the affiliated shareholder other than by reason of the affiliated shareholder’s beneficial ownership of voting shares of the corporation.

Neither our certificate of formation nor our bylaws contain any provision expressly providing that the Company will not be subject to the Texas Business Combination Law. The Texas Business Combination Law may have the effect of inhibiting a nonnegotiated merger or other business combination involving Veritex, even if that event would be beneficial to our shareholders.

Action by Written Consent

Under Texas law, no action required or permitted to be taken at an annual or special meeting of shareholders may be taken by written consent in lieu of a meeting of shareholders without the unanimous written consent of all shareholders entitled to vote on the action unless the certificate of formation specifically allows action to be taken by a written consent of the shareholders holding at least the minimum number of shares necessary to take the action that is subject to that consent at a meeting of shareholders, even though such consent is not signed by all of the corporation’s shareholders. Our amended and restated certificate of formation provides for shareholder action by less than unanimous written consent.

Certain Certificate of Formation and Bylaw Provisions Potentially Having an Anti-takeover Effect

Our certificate of formation and bylaws contain certain provisions that could have an anti-takeover effect and thus discourage potential takeover attempts and make it more difficult for our shareholders to change management or receive a premium for their shares. These provisions include:

[Table of Contents](#)

- authorization for our board of directors to issue shares of one or more series of preferred stock without shareholder approval;
- a requirement that directors only be removed from office for cause and only upon the affirmative vote of the holders of four fifths (4/5) of the outstanding shares of our common stock;
- a provision that vacancies on our board of directors, including newly created directorships, may be filled only by a majority vote of directors then in office;

- a provision that any special meeting of our shareholders may be called only by a majority of the board of directors, the Chairman, the President or a holder or group of holders of at least 10.0% of our shares entitled to vote at the meeting;
- no provision providing for the cumulative voting in the election of directors; and
- a limitation on the ability of shareholders to call special meetings to those shareholders owning at least 10% of all shares entitled to vote in the election of directors at a meeting.

Limitation of Liability and Indemnification of Officers and Directors

Our amended and restated certificate of formation will provide that our directors and officers will be indemnified by us to the fullest extent permitted by the TBOC, against all expenses incurred in connection with their service for or on our behalf. In addition, our amended and restated certificate of formation will provide that our directors and officers will not be personally liable for monetary damages to us to the fullest extent permitted by the TBOC.

We have entered into indemnification agreements with our officers and directors pursuant to which they will be indemnified as described above and will be advanced costs and expenses subject to the condition that such officers and directors will reimburse us for all advancements paid if a final judicial determination is made that such officer or director is not entitled to indemnification under applicable law or regulation.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED STOCK

The following description is a general summary of the terms of the preferred stock that we may issue. The description below and in any prospectus supplement relating to the offer for sale of shares of a series of our preferred stock does not purport to be complete and is subject to and qualified in its entirety by reference to our certificate of formation, as amended, and the applicable certificate of designation to our certificate of formation establishing the terms of the series of preferred stock being offered for sale by means of a prospectus supplement and our bylaws, as amended, each of which we will make available upon request. The descriptions herein and in the applicable prospectus supplement do not contain all of the information that you may find useful or that may be important to you. You should refer to the provisions of our certificate of formation, the applicable certificate of designation and our bylaws because they, and not the summaries, define your rights as a holder of shares of our preferred stock. See “Where You Can Find More Information” for additional information.

General

We are authorized to issue 10,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.01 per share. As of July 31, 2015, 8,000 shares of our Series C preferred stock were issued and outstanding in connection with our participation in the U.S. Treasury’s Small Business Lending Fund-Securities program. The issuance was pursuant to the SBLF program, a fund established under the Small Business Jobs Act of 2010 that was created to encourage lending to small business by providing capital to qualified community banks.

Our certificate of formation, subject to limitations prescribed in our bylaws and subject to limitations prescribed by Texas law, authorizes the board of directors, from time to time by resolution or duly authorizing committee of the board and without further shareholder action, to provide for the issuance of shares of preferred stock, in one or more series, and to fix the relative rights and preferences of the shares of a series including voting powers, dividend rights, liquidation preferences, redemption rights and conversion privileges. As a result of its broad discretion with respect to the creation, establishment of the terms, and issuance of shares of a series of our preferred stock without shareholder approval, our board of directors could adversely affect the voting power of the holders of common stock or another series of preferred stock and, by issuing shares of preferred stock with certain voting, conversion and/or redemption rights, could discourage any attempt to obtain control of our Company.

Terms of the Preferred Stock That We May Offer and Sell to You

You should refer to the prospectus supplement relating to the shares of one or more series of preferred stock being offered for sale for the specific terms of that series, including:

- the title and par value of the series of preferred stock being offered and the price per share at which such shares of the series of preferred stock are being offered to the public;
- the number of shares of the series of preferred stock being offered;
- the number of shares of preferred stock included in that series of preferred stock;

[Table of Contents](#)

- the liquidation preference per share of the preferred stock of such series;
- the dividend rate(s), period(s) and/or payment date(s) or method(s) of calculating the payment date(s) applicable to the shares of the series of preferred stock being offered;
- whether dividends will be cumulative or noncumulative and, if cumulative, the date from which dividends on the shares of preferred stock being offered will accumulate;
- the procedures for any auction and remarketing, if any, for the shares of preferred stock being offered;

- the provisions for a sinking fund, if any, for the shares of preferred stock being offered;
- the provisions for redemption, if applicable, of the shares of preferred stock being offered;
- any listing of the shares of preferred stock being offered on any securities exchange or market;
- the terms and conditions, if applicable, upon which the shares of preferred stock being offered will be convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or rights, or a combination of the foregoing, including the name of the issuer of the securities or rights, conversion or exchange ratio or price, or the manner of calculating the conversion or exchange ratio or price, and the conversion or exchange date(s) or period(s) and whether we will have the option to convert such preferred stock into cash;
- voting rights, if any, of the shares of preferred stock being offered;
- a discussion of any material and/or special United States federal income tax considerations applicable to the shares of preferred stock being offered;
- the relative ranking and preferences of the shares of preferred stock being offered as to dividend rights to participate in our assets and rights upon winding up or termination of the affairs of our Company;
- any limitations on the issuance of any series of preferred stock ranking senior to or equally with the series of preferred stock being offered as to dividend rights and rights to participate in our assets upon winding up or termination of the affairs of our Company; and
- any other specific terms, preferences, rights, limitations or restrictions of the shares of preferred stock being offered.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

This section describes the general terms and provisions of the warrants. The prospectus supplement will describe the specific terms of the warrants offered through that prospectus supplement and any general terms outlined in this section that will not apply to those warrants.

We may issue warrants for the purchase of debt securities, common stock or preferred stock. Warrants may be issued alone or together with securities offered by any prospectus supplement and may be attached to or separate from those securities. Each series of warrants will be issued under a separate warrant agreement between us and a bank or trust company, as warrant agent, which will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement. The warrant agent will act solely as our agent in connection with the warrants and will not act as an agent or trustee for any holders of warrants.

We have summarized the material terms and provisions of the warrant agreements and warrants in this section. We will file the forms of warrant agreements and the certificates representing the warrants as exhibits to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part or as an exhibit to documents incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference in this prospectus. You should read the applicable forms of warrant agreement and warrant certificate for additional information before you buy any warrants.

General

If warrants are offered, the applicable prospectus supplement will describe the terms of those warrants, including the following if applicable:

- the offering price;
- in the case of warrants for common stock, the total number of shares that can be purchased if a holder of the warrants exercises them, in the case of warrants for preferred stock, the designation, total number and terms of the series of preferred stock that can be purchased if a holder of the warrants exercises them and, in the case of warrants for debt securities, the designation, aggregate principal amount, currencies, denominations and terms of the series of the debt securities that can be purchased if a holder of the warrants exercises them;
- the designation and terms of any series of debt securities, common stock or preferred stock with which the warrants are being offered and the number of warrants offered with each debt security, share of common stock or share of preferred stock;
- the date on and after which the holder of the warrants can transfer them separately from the related securities;
- in the case of warrants for common stock or preferred stock, the price at which the common stock or preferred stock may be purchased if a holder of the warrants exercises them, and in the case of warrants for debt securities, the principal amount of the series of debt securities that can be purchased if a holder exercises the warrant and the price at

[Table of Contents](#)

which and currencies in which the principal amount may be purchased if a holder of the warrants exercises them;

- the date on which the right to exercise the warrants begins and the date on which the right expires;
- any material United States federal income tax consequences relevant to the warrants; and
- any other terms of the warrants.

Unless we state otherwise in the applicable prospectus supplement, the warrants will be in registered form only.

A holder of warrant certificates may exchange them for new certificates of different denominations, present them for registration of transfer, and exercise them at the corporate trust office of the warrant agent or any other office indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Until any warrants to purchase debt securities are exercised, the holder of such warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the debt securities that can be purchased upon exercise, including any right to receive payments of principal, premium or interest on the underlying debt securities or to enforce covenants in the applicable indenture. Until any warrants to purchase common stock or preferred stock are exercised, holders of such warrants will not have any rights of holders of the underlying common stock or preferred stock, including any right to receive dividends or to exercise any voting rights.

Exercise of Warrants

Each holder of a warrant is entitled to purchase the principal amount of debt securities, number of shares of common stock or number of shares of preferred stock, as the case may be, at the exercise price described in the applicable prospectus supplement. After the close of business on the day when the right to exercise terminates, or a later date if we extend the time for exercise, unexercised warrants will become void.

A holder of warrants may exercise them by following the general procedure outlined below:

- delivering to the warrant agent the payment required by the applicable prospectus supplement to purchase the underlying security;
- properly completing and signing the reverse side of the warrant certificate representing the warrants; and
- delivering the warrant certificate representing the warrants to the warrant agent, or other office indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, within five business days of the warrant agent receiving payment of the exercise price.

[Table of Contents](#)

If a holder of warrant complies with the procedures described above, their warrants will be considered to have been exercised when the warrant agent receives payment of the exercise price. After a holder of warrants has completed those procedures, we will, as soon as practicable, issue and deliver to the holder the debt securities, common stock or preferred stock that the holder purchased upon exercise. If a holder of warrants exercises fewer than all of the warrants represented by a warrant certificate, the warrant agent will issue to the holder a new warrant certificate for the unexercised amount of warrants. Holders of warrants will be required to pay any tax or governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with transferring the underlying securities in connection with the exercise of the warrants.

Amendments and Supplements to Warrant Agreements

We may amend or supplement a warrant agreement without the consent of the holders of the applicable warrants if the changes are not inconsistent with the provisions of the warrants and do not materially adversely affect the interests of the holders of the warrants. We, along with the warrant agent, may also modify or amend a warrant agreement and the terms of the warrants if a majority of the then outstanding unexercised warrants affected by the modification or amendment consent. However, no modification or amendment that accelerates the expiration date, increases the exercise price, reduces the majority consent requirement for any such modification or amendment, or otherwise materially adversely affects the rights of the holders of the warrants may be made without the consent of each holder affected by the modification or amendment.

Common Stock Warrant Adjustments

Unless the applicable prospectus supplement states otherwise, the exercise price of, and the number of shares of common stock covered by, a warrant for common stock will be adjusted in the manner set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement if certain events occur, including:

- if we issue capital stock as a dividend or distribution on the common stock;
- if we subdivide, reclassify or combine the common stock;
- if we issue rights or warrants to all holders of common stock entitling them to purchase common stock at less than the current market price, as defined in the warrant agreement for such series of common stock warrants;
- if we distribute to all holders of common stock evidence of our indebtedness or our assets, excluding certain cash dividends and distributions referred to above; or
- any other event described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

Except as stated above, the exercise price and number of shares of common stock covered by a common stock warrant will not be adjusted if we issue common stock or any securities convertible into or exchangeable for common stock, or securities carrying the right to purchase common stock or securities convertible into or exchangeable for common stock.

[Table of Contents](#)

Holders of common stock warrants may have additional rights under the following circumstances:

- a reclassification or change of the common stock;

- a consolidation, merger or share exchange involving us; or
- a sale or conveyance to another corporation of all or substantially all of our property and assets.

If one of the above transactions occurs and holders of our common stock become entitled to receive stock, securities, other property or assets, including cash, with respect to or in exchange for common stock, the holders of the common stock warrants then outstanding will be entitled to receive upon exercise of their common stock warrants the kind and amount of shares of stock and other securities or property that they would have received upon the reclassification, change, consolidation, merger, share exchange, sale or conveyance if they had exercised their common stock warrants immediately before the transaction.

[Table of Contents](#)

DESCRIPTION OF UNIT PURCHASE AGREEMENTS

Securities may be offered and sold as part of units consisting of a unit purchase agreement relating the purchase of any combination of:

- debt securities of one or more series;
- one or more series of preferred stock;
- warrants; or
- common stock;

which may secure the holders' obligations to purchase the common stock, preferred stock and/or debt securities under the unit purchase agreements. The applicable prospectus supplement will describe the terms of any unit purchase agreements. Such description may not be complete. For more information, you should review the unit purchase agreements and, if applicable, any related arrangements relating to those unit purchase agreements. We will file forms of these documents with the SEC before the Company issues any unit purchase agreements.

[Table of Contents](#)

BOOK ENTRY ISSUANCE

If so provided in the applicable prospectus supplement, we will issue the debt securities of each series offered by means of this prospectus in the form of one or more fully registered global debt securities, without coupons, each of which we refer to as a "global security." Each such global security will be registered in the name of a depositary or a nominee of a depositary and held through one or more domestic clearing systems, principally the book-entry system operated by DTC in the United States. No person who acquires an interest in these global securities will be entitled to receive a certificate or other instrument representing the person's interest in the global securities except as set forth under "—Certificated Debt Securities" below or in the applicable prospectus supplement. Unless otherwise provided in the applicable prospectus supplement, all references in this prospectus or any prospectus supplement to this prospectus to actions by holders of any debt securities that are global securities refer to actions taken by DTC upon instructions from its participants, and all references herein to payments and notices to the holders refer to payments and notices to DTC or its nominee, as the case may be, as the registered holder of the offered debt securities. Electronic securities and payment transfer, processing, depositary and custodial links have been established among the DTC system and other systems, either directly or indirectly, which enable global securities to be issued, held and transferred among these clearing systems through these links.

Although DTC has agreed to the procedures described below in order to facilitate transfers of global securities among participants in DTC, it is under no obligation to perform or continue to perform those procedures, and those procedures may be modified or discontinued at any time. Neither we, the trustee nor any registrar and transfer agent with respect to our debt securities of any series offered by means of this prospectus will have any responsibility for the performance by DTC or any of its direct or indirect participants of its obligations under the rules and procedures governing the operations of DTC.

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, the debt securities of a series issued in the form of one or more global securities will be registered in the name of DTC or a nominee of DTC. Where appropriate with respect to the debt securities of a series being offered and sold by means of this prospectus, links will be established among DTC to facilitate cross-market transfers of those debt securities associated with secondary market trading. While the following information in this prospectus concerning DTC and its book-entry system has been obtained from sources we believe to be reliable, we take no responsibility for the accuracy of that information. Furthermore, DTC has no obligation to perform or continue to perform the procedures described below, and any of them may discontinue or change those procedures at any time.

DTC

We understand the following information is applicable with respect to DTC: DTC is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the

New York Uniform Commercial Code and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the

[Table of Contents](#)

provisions of Section 17A of the Exchange Act. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues and money market instruments that DTC's participating organizations, referred to as "direct DTC participants," deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the clearance and post-trade settlement among direct DTC participants of sales and other securities transactions, such as transfers and pledges, in deposited securities through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges in direct DTC participants' accounts, thereby eliminating the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct DTC participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations and certain other organizations, some of which, and/or their representatives, indirectly own DTC. DTC is a wholly owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation, or DTCC. DTCC is owned by a number of direct DTC participants and members of the National Securities Clearing Corporation, the Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, and the Emerging Markets Clearing Corporation (which corporations are also subsidiaries of DTCC), as well as by the New York Stock Exchange, Inc., the American Stock Exchange LLC, and the Financial Industry Regulatory Authority, Inc. Indirect access to the DTC system is also available to others, referred to as "indirect DTC participants" and together with direct DTC participants, referred to as "DTC participants," such as U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies and clearing corporations, that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a direct DTC participant, either directly or indirectly. DTC rules applicable to DTC participants are on file with the SEC.

Beneficial interests in a global security representing outstanding debt securities of a series will be shown on, and transfers of beneficial interests in the global security will be made only through, records maintained by DTC and DTC participants. When you purchase our debt securities through the DTC system, the purchases must be made by or through a direct DTC participant, which will receive credit for the debt securities in its account on DTC's records. When you actually purchase the debt securities, you will become their beneficial owner and your ownership interest will be recorded only on the records of the DTC participants. DTC will have no knowledge of your individual ownership of the debt securities. DTC's records will show only the identity of the direct DTC participants and the amount of the debt securities held by or through them. When you purchase debt securities through the DTC system, you will not receive a written confirmation of your purchase or sale or any periodic account statement directly from DTC. You should instead receive these confirmations and account statements from the DTC participant through which you purchase the debt securities. The DTC participants are responsible for keeping accurate account of the holdings of their customers.

The trustee and we will treat DTC or its nominee as the owner of each global security registered in the name of DTC or its nominee for all purposes. Accordingly, the trustee will wire payments on the debt securities to the DTC nominee that is the registered holder of the debt securities. It is DTC's current practice, upon receipt of any payment of distributions or liquidation amounts due on a global security, to proportionately credit direct DTC participants' accounts on the payment date based on their holdings of the relevant securities. Payments to you with respect to your beneficial interest in any debt securities in turn will be the responsibility of the DTC participants based on their respective customary practices, and the trustee, any paying agent and we will have no direct responsibility or liability to pay amounts due on a global security to you or any other beneficial owners in that global security. Any redemption notices likewise will be sent by us or, at our request, by the trustee directly to DTC, which in turn will

50

[Table of Contents](#)

inform the DTC participants, which will then contact you as a beneficial holder. In addition, it is DTC's current practice to pass through any consenting or voting rights to the direct DTC participants by using an omnibus proxy. Those direct DTC participants should, in turn, solicit votes and consents from you, the ultimate owner of debt securities, based on their respective customary practices.

Under the rules, regulations and procedures creating and affecting DTC and its operations, DTC is required to make book-entry transfers between direct DTC participants on whose behalf it acts with respect to the debt securities and is required to receive and transmit distributions of principal of and premium, if any, and interest on the debt securities. DTC participants with which investors have accounts with respect to the debt securities similarly are required to make book-entry transfers and receive and transmit payments on behalf of their respective investors.

Because DTC can only act on behalf of direct DTC participants, who in turn act on behalf of indirect DTC participants and certain banks, the ability of a person having a beneficial interest in a security held in DTC to transfer or pledge that interest to persons or entities that do not participate in the DTC system, or otherwise take actions in respect of that interest, may be affected by the lack of a physical certificate representing that interest. The laws of some states of the United States require that certain persons take physical delivery of securities in certificated form in order to transfer or perfect a security interest in those securities. Consequently, the ability to transfer beneficial interests in a security held in DTC to those persons may be limited.

DTC has advised us that it will take any action permitted to be taken by a holder of debt securities under the terms and conditions of the debt securities (including, without limitation, the presentation of debt securities for exchange) only at the direction of one or more of the direct DTC participants to whose accounts with DTC interests in the relevant debt securities are credited, and only in respect of the portion of the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities as to which that direct DTC participant has or those direct DTC participants have given the direction. However, in certain circumstances described below under "—Certificated Debt Securities" below, DTC will exchange the global securities held by it for certificated debt securities, which it will distribute to the direct DTC participants.

Certificated Debt Securities

Debt securities represented by one or more global securities will be exchangeable for certificated debt securities with the same terms in authorized denominations only if:

- DTC is unwilling or unable to continue as depository or ceases to be a clearing agency registered under applicable law, and a successor is not appointed by us within 90 days; or
- we decide to discontinue the book-entry system; or
- an event of default has occurred and is continuing with respect to the applicable debt securities.

If a global security is exchanged for certificated debt securities, the trustee will keep the registration books for the applicable debt securities at its corporate office and follow customary practices and procedures regarding those certificated debt securities.

51

PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

The Company may sell the offered securities:

- directly to purchasers,
- through agents,
- through dealers,
- through underwriters,
- directly to its stockholders, or
- through a combination of any of these methods of sale.

The prospectus supplement relating to the offered securities will set forth the terms of the offering, including the name or names of any underwriters, dealers or agents, the initial offering price of the offered securities to the public and the proceeds to the from the sale, any underwriting discounts, commissions and other items constituting underwriters' compensation, and any underwriting discounts, commissions and other allowances and reallowances paid to dealers or agents and any securities exchanges on which the offered securities may be listed.

The Company may use one or more underwriters in the sale of the offered securities, in which case the offered securities will be acquired by the underwriter or underwriters for their own account and may be resold from time to time in one or more transactions either:

- at a fixed price or prices, which may be changed,
- at market prices prevailing at the time of sale,
- at prices related to the prevailing market prices, or
- at negotiated prices.

The Company may directly solicit offers to purchase offered securities. Agents designated by the Company from time to time may also solicit offers to purchase offered securities. Any agent designated by the Company, who may be deemed to be an "underwriter" as that term is defined in the Securities Act, involved in the offer or sale of the offered securities in respect of which this prospectus is delivered will be named, and any commissions payable by the Company to such agent will be set forth, in the prospectus supplement.

If a dealer is utilized in the sale of the offered securities in respect of which this prospectus and a related prospectus supplement is delivered, the Company will sell the offered securities to the dealer, as principal. The dealer, who may be deemed to be an "underwriter" as that term is defined in the Securities Act, may then resell the offered securities to the public at varying prices to be determined by the dealer at the time of resale.

If an underwriter is, or underwriters are, used in the sale, the Company will execute an underwriting agreement with the underwriters at the time of sale to the underwriters. The names of the underwriters will be set forth in the prospectus supplement, which, along with this prospectus, will be used by the underwriter to make resales of the offered securities in respect of which this prospectus is delivered to the public. In connection with the sale of offered securities, the underwriter may be deemed to have received compensation from the Company in the form of underwriting discounts or commissions and may also receive commissions from purchasers of offered securities for whom they may act as agents. Underwriters may also sell offered securities to or through dealers, and the dealers may receive compensation in the form of discounts, concessions or commissions from the underwriters and/or commissions from the purchasers for whom they may act as agents.

If so indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the Company will authorize underwriters, dealers or other persons to solicit offers by certain institutions to purchase offered securities from the Company at the public offering price set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement pursuant to delayed delivery contracts providing for payment and delivery on a future date or dates. Institutions with which these contracts may be made include commercial and savings banks, insurance companies, pension funds, investment companies, educational and charitable institutions and others. The obligations of any purchasers under any delayed delivery contract will not be subject to any conditions except that:

- the purchase of the offered securities shall not at the time of delivery be prohibited under the laws of the jurisdiction to which the purchaser is subject, and
- if the offered securities are also being sold to underwriters, the Company will have sold to the underwriters the offered securities not sold for delayed delivery.

The underwriters, dealers and other persons will not have any responsibility in respect of the validity or performance of such contracts. The prospectus supplement relating to the contracts will set forth the price to be paid for offered securities pursuant to the contracts, the commission payable for solicitation of the contracts and the date or dates in the future for delivery of offered securities pursuant to the contracts.

Offered securities may also be offered and sold, if so indicated in the prospectus supplement, in connection with a remarketing upon their purchase, in accordance with a redemption or repayment pursuant to their terms, or otherwise, by one or more remarketing firms, acting as principals for their own accounts or as agents for the Company. Any remarketing firm will be identified and the terms of its agreement, if any, with the Company and its

compensation will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement. Remarketing firms may be deemed to be underwriters in connection with their remarketing of offered securities.

Unless otherwise set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement, the obligations of underwriters to purchase the offered securities will be subject to certain conditions precedent and such underwriters will be obligated to purchase all such securities, if any are purchased. In connection with the offering of securities, we may grant to the underwriters an option to purchase additional securities to cover over-allotments at the initial public offering price, with an additional underwriting commission, as may be set forth in the accompanying prospectus supplement. If we grant any over-allotment option, the terms of such over-allotment option will be set forth in the prospectus supplement for such securities.

53

[Table of Contents](#)

Underwriters, dealers, remarketing firms and agents may be entitled, under agreements that may be entered into with the Company, to indemnification by the Company against certain civil liabilities, including liabilities under the Securities Act, or to contribution with respect to payments which they may be required to make in respect thereof and may engage in transactions with, or perform services for, the Company in the ordinary course of business.

Any underwriter may engage in over-allotment, stabilizing transactions, short-covering transactions and penalty bids in accordance with Regulation M under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or the Exchange Act. Over-allotment involves sales in excess of the offering size, which create a short position. Stabilizing transactions permit bids to purchase the underlying security so long as the stabilizing bids do not exceed a specified maximum. Short-covering transactions involve purchases of the securities in the open market after the distribution is completed to cover short positions. Penalty bids permit the underwriters to reclaim a selling concession from a dealer when the securities originally sold by the dealer are purchased in a covering transaction to cover short positions. Those activities may cause the price of the securities to be higher than it would otherwise be. If commenced, the underwriters may discontinue any of the activities at any time.

The anticipated date of delivery of offered securities will be set forth in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to each offer.

54

[Table of Contents](#)

WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We are subject to the information requirements of the Exchange Act and file annual, quarterly and current reports, proxy statements, information statements and other information with the SEC. Because our common stock trades on the NASDAQ Global Market under the symbol "VBTX," those materials can also be inspected and copied at the offices of that organization. Here are ways you can review and obtain copies of this information:

What is Available	Where to Get it
Paper copies of information	SEC's Public Reference Room 100 F Street, N.E. Washington, D.C. 20549
	NASDAQ Stock Market, Inc. Global Market One Liberty Plaza 165 Broadway New York, NY 10006
On-line information, free of charge	SEC's Internet website at www.sec.gov
Information about the SEC's Public Reference Room	Call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330

We have filed with the SEC a registration statement on Form S-3 under the Securities Act, relating to the securities covered by this prospectus. The registration statement, including the attached exhibits and schedules, contains additional relevant information about us and the securities. This prospectus does not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement. Whenever a reference is made in this prospectus to a contract or other document, the reference is only a summary and you should refer to the exhibits that form a part of the registration statement for a copy of the contract or other document. You can get a copy of the registration statement, at prescribed rates, from the sources listed above. The registration statement and the documents referred to below under "Incorporation of Certain Documents by Reference" are also available on our Internet website, www.veritexbank.com. You can also obtain these documents from us, without charge (other than exhibits, unless the exhibits are specifically incorporated by reference), upon written or oral request at the following address and telephone number:

8214 Westchester Drive, Suite 400
Dallas, Texas 75225
(972) 349-6200
Attention: Corporate Secretary

The information contained on our website does not constitute a part of this prospectus.

55

[Table of Contents](#)

INCORPORATION OF CERTAIN DOCUMENTS BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to “incorporate by reference” information into this prospectus, which means:

- incorporated documents are considered part of this prospectus;
- we can disclose important information to you by referring you to those documents; and
- information that we file later with the SEC automatically will update and supersede information contained in this prospectus.

This prospectus incorporates by reference the documents listed below that we have previously filed with the SEC (File No. 001- 36682). These documents contain important information about us:

- our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014, filed with the SEC on March 27, 2015, including the information in our proxy statement that is part of our Schedule 14A filed with the SEC on March 27, 2015, that is incorporated by reference in that Annual Report on Form 10-K;
- our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2015, filed with the SEC on May 4, 2015;
- our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2015, filed with the SEC on July 31, 2015;
- our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 30, 2015, filed with the SEC on October 30, 2015;
- our Current Reports on Form 8-K (and any amendments thereto) filed with the SEC on May 18, 2015 and July 1, 2015 (other than any portions thereof deemed furnished and not filed in accordance with SEC rules); and
- the description of our common stock, par value \$0.01 per share, contained in our Registration Statement on Form 8-A, filed with the SEC on October 8, 2014, and any other amendment or report filed for the purposes of updating such description.

We incorporate by reference any additional documents that we may file with the SEC under Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act (other than those furnished pursuant to Item 2.02 or Item 7.01 of Form 8-K or other information “furnished” to the SEC), from the date of the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part until the termination of the offering of the securities. These documents may include annual, quarterly and current reports, as well as proxy statements. Any material that we later file with the SEC will automatically update and supersede, where appropriate, the information previously filed with the SEC. These documents are available to you without charge. See “Where You Can Find More Information.”

56

[Table of Contents](#)

Any statement contained in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated herein by reference shall be deemed to be modified or superseded to the extent that a statement contained herein or in any other subsequently filed document that also is or is deemed to be incorporated herein by reference modifies or supersedes such statement in such document.

57

[Table of Contents](#)

VALIDITY OF THE SECURITIES

Unless otherwise stated in the applicable prospectus supplement, the validity of our securities offered pursuant to this prospectus and related prospectus supplements will be passed upon for us by Bracewell & Giuliani LLP, Houston, Texas, and for the underwriters or agents by counsel named in the applicable prospectus supplement.

58

[Table of Contents](#)

EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements as of and for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2013 incorporated by reference in this prospectus and elsewhere in the registration statement have been so incorporated by reference in reliance upon the report of Grant Thornton LLP, independent registered public accountants, upon the authority of said firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

The consolidated financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2012 incorporated by reference in this prospectus have been audited by JonesBaggett LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, who merged with Whitley Penn LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as of November 1, 2014, as stated in their report incorporated by reference herein. Such consolidated financial statements are included in reliance upon the report of such firm given upon their authority as experts in accounting and auditing.

59

[Table of Contents](#)

Debt Securities

Common Stock

Preferred Stock

Warrants

Units



Veritex Holdings, Inc.

[Table of Contents](#)

PART II

INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS

Item 14. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.

Estimated fees and expenses, other than underwriting discounts and commissions, payable by the Company in connection with the issuance and distribution of the offered securities as follows:

SEC Registration Fee	\$	15,105
Accounting Fees and Expenses		15,000
Legal Fees and Expenses		105,000
Printing and Engraving Expenses		5,000
Trustees' and Depositary Fees and Expenses		5,000
Miscellaneous Expenses		5,000
Total	\$	150,105

Item 15. Indemnification of Directors and Officers

Our amended and restated certificate of formation provides that our directors and officers will be indemnified by us to the fullest extent permitted by the Texas Business Organizations Code, or TBOC, against all expenses incurred in connection with their service for or on our behalf. In addition, our amended and restated certificate of formation provides that our directors and officers will not be personally liable for monetary damages to us to the fullest extent permitted by the TBOC.

We have entered into indemnification agreements with our officers and directors pursuant to which they will be indemnified as described above and will be advanced costs and expenses subject to the condition that such officers and directors will reimburse us for all advancements paid if a final judicial determination is made that such officer or director is not entitled to indemnification under applicable law or regulation.

Item 16. Exhibits

- 1.1* — Form of Underwriting Agreement.
- 4.1 — Specimen Common Stock Certificate (incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1(Registration No. 333-198484) filed September 29, 2014).
- 4.2 — Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1(Registration No. 333-198484) filed August 29, 2014).

[Table of Contents](#)

- 4.3 — Form of Senior Debt Indenture by and between Veritex Holdings, Inc. and U.S. Bank National Association, in its capacity as indenture trustee.

- 4.4 — Form of Subordinated Debt Indenture by and between Veritex Holdings, Inc. and U.S. Bank National Association, in its capacity as indenture trustee.
- 4.5* — Form of Senior Debt Securities.
- 4.6* — Form of Subordinated Debt Securities.
- 4.7* — Forms of Supplemental Indentures to Establish One or More Series of Senior Debt Securities.
- 4.8* — Forms of Supplemental Indentures to Establish One or More Series of Subordinated Debt Securities.
- 4.9* — Form of Warrant Agreement (including Form of Warrant Certificate) with respect to Warrants to Purchase Debt Securities, Preferred Stock, Depositary Shares, Common Stock or Units.
- 4.10* — Form of Unit Agreement.
- 5.1 — Opinion of Bracewell & Giuliani LLP regarding the legality of the securities being registered.
- 12.1 — Computation of Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges.
- 23.1 — Consent of Grant Thornton LLP.
- 23.2 — Consent of Whitley Penn LLP.
- 23.3 — Consent of Bracewell & Giuliani LLP (included as part of Exhibit 5.1).
- 24.1 — Power of Attorney (included on original signature page to this Registration Statement).
- 25.1 — Form T-1 of Trustee for the Senior Debt Indenture and the Subordinated Debt Indenture.

* To be filed, if necessary, by amendment or incorporated by reference to a Current Report on Form 8-K in connection with the offering of securities registered hereunder.

[Table of Contents](#)

Item 17. Undertakings.

- (a) The undersigned Registrant hereby undertakes:
 - (1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:
 - (i) to include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;
 - (ii) to reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20 percent change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement; and
 - (iii) to include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement;

provided, however, that paragraphs (a)(1)(i), (1)(2)(ii) and (a)(3)(iii) do not apply if the information required to be included in a post-effective amendment by those paragraphs is contained in reports filed with or furnished to the Commission by the Registrant pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 that are incorporated by reference in the registration statement, or is contained in a form of prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) that is part of the registration statement.

- (2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

- (4) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:
- (i) Each prospectus filed by a Registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and
 - (ii) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5) or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii) or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by Section 10(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which the prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof. Provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date.
- (5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of a Registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, the undersigned Registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned Registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned Registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:
- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of an undersigned Registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;

II-4

[Table of Contents](#)

- (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of an undersigned Registrant or used or referred to by an undersigned Registrant;
 - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about an undersigned Registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of an undersigned Registrant; and
 - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by an undersigned Registrant to the purchaser.
- (b) The undersigned Registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of Registrant's annual report pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.
- (c) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of each Registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, each Registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act of 1933 and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by a Registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of a Registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, that Registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act of 1933 and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.
- (d) To file an application for the purpose of determining the eligibility of the trustee to act under subsection (a) of Section 310 of the Trust Indenture Act in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed by the Securities and Exchange Commission under Section 305(b) (2) of the Trust Indenture Act.

II-5

[Table of Contents](#)

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant certifies that it has reasonable grounds to believe that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form S-3 and has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the city of Dallas, State of Texas, on November 10, 2015.

VERITEX HOLDINGS, INC.

By: /s/ C. MALCOLM HOLLAND, III
C. Malcolm Holland, III
Chairman and Chief Executive Officer

POWER OF ATTORNEY

KNOW ALL PERSONS BY THESE PRESENTS, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints C. Malcolm Holland, III and William C. Murphy as his or her true and lawful attorneys-in-fact and agents, with full power of substitution and resubstitution, for him or her and in his or her name, place and stead, in any and all capacities, to sign any and all amendments (including post-effective amendments and registration statements filed pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act) to this Registration Statement and to file the same, with all relevant exhibits and other documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, granting unto said attorneys-in-fact and agents and each of them, full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite and necessary to be done in connection therewith, as fully to all intents and purposes as he might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorneys-in-fact and agents, or any of them, or their or his substitutes or substitute, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof. Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act, this Registration Statement has been signed below by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated below.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
<u>/s/ C. Malcolm Holland, III</u> C. Malcolm Holland, III	Chairman, Chief Executive Officer and Director (Principal Executive Officer)	November 10, 2015
<u>/s/ William C. Murphy</u> William C. Murphy	Vice Chairman	November 10, 2015

[Table of Contents](#)

<u>/s/ Noreen E. Skelly</u> Noreen E. Skelly	Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and Principal Accounting Officer)	November 10, 2015
<u>/s/ Pat S. Bolin</u> Pat S. Bolin	Director	November 10, 2015
<u>/s/ Blake Bozman</u> Blake Bozman	Director	November 10, 2015
<u>/s/ Mark Griege</u> Mark Griege	Director	November 10, 2015
<u>/s/ Michael D. Ilagan</u> Michael D. Ilagan	Director	November 10, 2015
<u>/s/ Michael Kowalski</u> Michael Kowalski	Director	November 10, 2015
<u>/s/ John Sughrue</u> John Sughrue	Director	November 10, 2015
<u>/s/ Ray W. Washburne</u> Ray W. Washburne	Director	November 10, 2015

[Table of Contents](#)

INDEX TO EXHIBITS

- 1.1* — Form of Underwriting Agreement.
- 4.1 — Specimen Common Stock Certificate (incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1(Registration No. 333-198484) filed September 29, 2014).
- 4.2 — Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant (incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1(Registration No. 333-198484) filed August 29, 2014).
- 4.3 — Form of Senior Debt Indenture by and between Veritex Holdings, Inc. and U.S. Bank National Association, in its capacity as indenture trustee.
- 4.4 — Form of Subordinated Debt Indenture by and between Veritex Holdings, Inc. and U.S. Bank National Association, in its capacity as indenture trustee.

- 4.5* — Form of Senior Debt Securities.
- 4.6* — Form of Subordinated Debt Securities.
- 4.7* — Forms of Supplemental Indentures to Establish One or More Series of Senior Debt Securities.
- 4.8* — Forms of Supplemental Indentures to Establish One or More Series of Subordinated Debt Securities.
- 4.9* — Form of Warrant Agreement (including Form of Warrant Certificate) with respect to Warrants to Purchase Debt Securities, Preferred Stock, Common Stock or Units.
- 4.10* — Form of Unit Agreement.
- 5.1 — Opinion of Bracewell & Giuliani LLP regarding the legality of the securities being registered.
- 12.1 — Computation of Ratio of Earnings to Fixed Charges.
- 23.1 — Consent of Grant Thornton LLP.
- 23.2 — Consent of Whitley Penn LLP.
- 23.3 — Consent of Bracewell & Giuliani LLP (included as part of Exhibit 5.1).
- 24.1 — Power of Attorney (included on original signature page to this Registration Statement).
- 25.1 — Form T-1 of Trustee for the Senior Debt Indenture and the Subordinated Debt Indenture.

* To be filed, if necessary, by amendment or incorporated by reference to a Current Report on Form 8-K in connection with the offering of securities registered hereunder.

VERITEX HOLDINGS, INC.,

Issuer

to

U.S. Bank National Association,

Trustee

SENIOR DEBT INDENTURE

Dated as of [·]

Senior Debt Securities

Reconciliation and tie between

Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (the "Trust Indenture Act") and Indenture

Trust Indenture Act Section	Indenture Section
§310(a)(1)	608
(a)(2)	608
(b)	609
§312(a)	701
(b)	702
(c)	702
§313(a)	703
(b)(2)	703
(c)	703
(d)	703
§314(a)	704
(c)(1)	102
(c)(2)	102
(e)	102
§315(b)	603
(e)	515
§316(a) (last sentence)	101
(a)(1)(A)	502, 512
(a)(1)(B)	513
(b)	508
§317(a)(1)	503
(a)(2)	504
(b)	1003
§318(a)	108

Note: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be part of the Indenture.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE ONE.	DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION	1
Section 101.	Definitions	1
Section 102.	Compliance Certificates and Opinions	9
Section 103.	Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee	9
Section 104.	Acts of Holders	10
Section 105.	Notices, etc. to Trustee and Company	11
Section 106.	Notice to Holders of Securities; Waiver	11
Section 107.	Language of Notices	12
Section 108.	Conflict with Trust Indenture Act	12
Section 109.	Effect of Headings and Table of Contents	12
Section 110.	Successors and Assigns	12
Section 111.	Separability Clause	12
Section 112.	Benefits of Indenture	12
Section 113.	Governing Law	13
Section 114.	Legal Holidays	13
Section 115.	Counterparts; Electronic Transmission	13

Section 116.	Immunity of Shareholders, Directors, Officers and Agents of the Company	13
Section 117.	Waiver of Jury Trial	13
Section 118.	Force Majeure	14
ARTICLE TWO.	SECURITIES FORMS	14
Section 201.	Forms Generally	14
Section 202.	Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication	14
Section 203.	Securities in Global Form	15
ARTICLE THREE.	THE SECURITIES	15
Section 301.	Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series	15
Section 302.	Currency; Denominations	20
Section 303.	Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating	20
Section 304.	Temporary Securities	21
Section 305.	Registration, Transfer and Exchange	22
Section 306.	Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	25
Section 307.	Payment of Interest; Rights to Interest Preserved	25
Section 308.	Persons Deemed Owners	27
Section 309.	Cancellation	27
Section 310.	Computation of Interest	27
ARTICLE FOUR.	SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE	28
Section 401.	Satisfaction and Discharge	28
Section 402.	Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance	29
Section 403.	Application of Trust Money	33
Section 404.	Reinstatement	33
ARTICLE FIVE.	REMEDIES	33
Section 501.	Events of Default	33
Section 502.	Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	35
Section 503.	Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	36
Section 504.	Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	37
<hr/>		
Section 505.	Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	38
Section 506.	Application of Money Collected	38
Section 507.	Limitation on Suits	38
Section 508.	Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest	39
Section 509.	Restoration of Rights and Remedies	39
Section 510.	Rights and Remedies Cumulative	40
Section 511.	Delay or Omission Not Waiver	40
Section 512.	Control by Holders	40
Section 513.	Waiver of Past Defaults	40
Section 514.	Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws	41
Section 515.	Undertaking for Costs	41
ARTICLE SIX.	THE TRUSTEE	41
Section 601.	Duties of Trustee	41
Section 602.	Certain Rights of Trustee	42
Section 603.	Notice of Defaults	44
Section 604.	Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	44
Section 605.	May Hold Securities	44
Section 606.	Money Held in Trust	44
Section 607.	Compensation and Reimbursement	45
Section 608.	Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	45
Section 609.	Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	46
Section 610.	Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	47
Section 611.	Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	49
Section 612.	Appointment of Authenticating Agent	49
ARTICLE SEVEN.	HOLDERS LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY	51
Section 701.	Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders	51
Section 702.	Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders	51
Section 703.	Reports by Trustee	51
Section 704.	Reports by Company	52
ARTICLE EIGHT.	CONSOLIDATION, MERGER AND SALES	53

Section 801.	Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms	53
Section 802.	Successor Person Substituted for Company	54
ARTICLE NINE.	SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES	54
Section 901.	Supplemental Indentures without Consent of Holders	54
Section 902.	Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders	56
Section 903.	Execution of Supplemental Indentures	57
Section 904.	Effect of Supplemental Indentures	57
Section 905.	Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures	57
Section 906.	Conformity with Trust Indenture Act	57
ARTICLE TEN.	COVENANTS	58
Section 1001.	Payment of Principal, Premium, Interest	58
Section 1002.	Maintenance of Office or Agency	58
Section 1003.	Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust	59
Section 1004.	Corporate Existence	60
Section 1005.	Maintenance of Properties	61
<hr/>		
Section 1006.	Waiver of Certain Covenants	61
Section 1007.	Company Statement as to Compliance	61
ARTICLE ELEVEN.	REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES	61
Section 1101.	Applicability of Article	61
Section 1102.	Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee	61
Section 1103.	Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed	62
Section 1104.	Notice of Redemption	62
Section 1105.	Deposit of Redemption Price	64
Section 1106.	Securities Payable on Redemption Date	64
Section 1107.	Securities Redeemed in Part	65
ARTICLE TWELVE.	SINKING FUNDS	65
Section 1201.	Applicability of Article	65
Section 1202.	Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	65
Section 1203.	Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	66
ARTICLE THIRTEEN.	[RESERVED]	66
ARTICLE FOURTEEN.	MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES	66
Section 1401.	Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called	66
Section 1402.	Call, Notice and Place of Meetings	67
Section 1403.	Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings	67
Section 1404.	Quorum; Action	67
Section 1405.	Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings	68
Section 1406.	Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings	69
<hr/>		

SENIOR DEBT INDENTURE, dated as of [-] (the “Indenture”), between Veritex Holdings, Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Texas (hereinafter called the “Company”), having its principal executive office located at 8214 Westchester Drive, Suite 400, Dallas, Texas 75225, and U.S. Bank National Association, a national banking association duly organized and existing under the laws of the United States (hereinafter called the “Trustee”).

RECITALS

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its senior, unsecured debt securities (hereinafter called the “Securities”), unlimited as to principal amount, to bear such rates of interest, to mature at such time or times, to be issued in one or more Series and to have such other provisions as shall be fixed as hereinafter provided.

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture. All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

This Indenture is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, and the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission promulgated thereunder that are required to be part of this Indenture and, to the extent applicable, shall be governed by such provisions.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders (as herein defined) thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or the Securities of any Series as follows:

ARTICLE ONE.

DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

Section 101. *Definitions.*

Except as otherwise expressly provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or unless the context otherwise requires, for all purposes of this Indenture:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article, and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with GAAP;

1

- (4) the words “herein,” “hereof,” “hereto” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision;
- (5) the word “or” is always used inclusively (for example, the phrase “A or B” means “A or B or both,” not “either A or B but not both”);
- (6) provisions apply to successive events and transactions;
- (7) the term “merger” includes a statutory share exchange and the terms “merge” and “merged” have correlative meanings;
- (8) the masculine gender includes the feminine and the neuter; and
- (9) references to agreements and other instruments include subsequent amendments and supplements thereto.

Certain terms used principally in certain Articles hereof are defined in those Articles.

“Act,” when used with respect to any Holders, has the meaning specified in Section 104.

“Affiliate” means, with respect to any specified Person, any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control,” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“Authenticating Agent” means any Person authorized by the Trustee pursuant to Section 612 to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more Series.

“Authorized Newspaper” means a newspaper, in an official language of the place of publication or in the English language, customarily published on each day that is a Business Day in the place of publication, whether or not published on days that are not Business Days in the place of publication, and of general circulation in each place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of each such place. Where successive publications are required to be made in Authorized Newspapers, the successive publications may be made in the same or in different newspapers in the same place meeting the foregoing requirements and in each case on any day that is a Business Day in the place of publication.

“Authorized Officer” means each of the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer, the President, and the Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of the Company.

“Board of Directors” means the board of directors of the Company or any committee of that board duly authorized to act generally or in any particular respect for the Company hereunder. The term “board of directors” means the board of directors of the Company and does not include committees of the board of directors.

2

“Board Resolution” means one or more resolutions, certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to the Securities of any Series pursuant to Section 301, any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which banking institutions in the City of Dallas, Texas, or The City of New York, New York, are authorized or obligated by law, regulation or executive order to close; provided that such term shall mean, when used with respect to any payment of principal of, or premium or interest, if any, on, the Securities of any Series to be made at any Place of Payment for such Securities, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 with respect to such Securities, any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which banking institutions in such Place of Payment are authorized or obligated by law, regulation or executive order to close.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, or, if at any time after the execution of this Indenture such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties

at such time.

“Common Stock” includes the Company common stock, par value \$0.01 per share, and any other authorized stock of any class of the Company that has no preference in respect of dividends or of amounts payable in the event of any voluntary or involuntary liquidation, termination or winding up of the Company and that is not subject to redemption by the Company.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Person and any other obligor upon the Securities.

“Company Request” and “Company Order” mean, respectively, a written request or order, as the case may be, signed in the name of the Company by an Authorized Officer and by the Secretary of the Company, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any time its corporate trust business shall be administered, which office at the date hereof is located at Dallas, Texas, or such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Holders and the Company, or the principal corporate trust office of any successor Trustee (or such other address as such successor Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Holders and the Company).

“corporation” includes corporations, partnerships, associations, limited liability companies and other companies, statutory trusts and business trusts.

“Currency,” with respect to any payment, deposit or other transfer in respect of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security, means Dollars.

“CUSIP number” means the alphanumeric designation assigned to a Security by

Standard & Poor’s, CUSIP Service Bureau.

“Dallas, Texas Banking Day” means any day except a Saturday, Sunday or a legal holiday in the City of Dallas, Texas, or a day on which banking institutions in the City of Dallas, Texas, are authorized or obligated by law, regulation or executive order to be closed.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 307.

“Depository” means, with respect to any Security issuable or issued in the form of one or more global Securities, the Person designated as depository by the Company in or pursuant to this Indenture, and, unless otherwise provided with respect to any Security, any successor to such Person. If at any time there is more than one such Person, “Depository” shall mean, with respect to any Securities, the depository that has been appointed with respect to such Securities.

“Dollars” or “\$” means a dollar or other equivalent unit of legal tender for payment of public or private debts in the United States of America.

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Section 501.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any successor statute thereto, together with all rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, in each case as amended from time to time.

“GAAP” and “generally accepted accounting principles” mean, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Series of Securities pursuant to Section 301, such accounting principles as are generally accepted in the United States of America as of the date or time of any computation required hereunder.

“Government Obligations” means securities which are (i) direct obligations of the United States of America in each case where the payment or payments thereunder are supported by the full faith and credit of the United States of America, or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America or such other government or governments, in each case where the timely payment or payments thereunder are unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America, and which, in the case of (i) or (ii), are denominated in, and the principal of and interest on such securities are payable in, Dollars and are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer or issuers thereof.

“Holder,” in the case of any Security, means the Person in whose name such Security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and, with respect to any Security, by the terms and provisions of such Security established pursuant to Section 301 (as such terms and provisions may be amended pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof), provided, however, that, if at any time more than one Person is acting as Trustee under this instrument, “Indenture” shall mean, with respect to any one or more Series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee, this

instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and shall include the terms of those particular Series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee established pursuant to Section 301, exclusive, however, of any provisions or terms which relate solely to other Series of Securities for which such Person is not Trustee, regardless of when such terms or provisions were adopted.

“Indexed Security” means a Security the terms of which provide that the principal amount thereof payable at Stated Maturity may be more or less than the principal face amount thereof at original issuance.

“interest,” with respect to any Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

“Interest Payment Date,” with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“Maturity,” with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security, whether at the Stated Maturity or by an acceleration of the maturity of such Security in accordance with the terms of such Security, upon redemption at the option of the Company, upon repurchase or repayment at the option of the Holder or otherwise, and includes a Redemption Date for such Security and a date fixed for the repurchase or repayment of such Security at the option of the Holder.

“Office” or “Agency,” with respect to any Securities, means an office or agency of the Company maintained or designated in a Place of Payment for such Securities pursuant to Section 1002 or any other office or agency of the Company maintained or designated for such Securities pursuant to Section 1002 or, to the extent designated or required by Section 1002 in lieu of such office or agency, the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee.

“Officer” means, with respect to any Person, the chairman of the board, vice chairman of the board, the chief executive officer, the president, the chief operating officer, the chief financial officer, the treasurer, any assistant treasurer, the controller, the secretary or any Vice President of such Person.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed on behalf of the Company by two Officers of the Company, one of whom must be an Authorized Officer (which, in the case of a certificate provided by the Company to the Trustee pursuant to Section 704(1)(b) as required by Section 314(a)(4) of the Trust Indenture Act, shall be the principal executive officer or the principal financial officer of the Company), that complies with the requirements of Section 314(e) of the Trust Indenture Act and is delivered to the Trustee.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who is reasonably acceptable to the Trustee, that, if required by the Trust Indenture Act, complies with the requirements of Section 314(e) of the Trust Indenture Act.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means a Security issued pursuant to this Indenture

5

that provides for an amount less than the principal face amount thereof to be due and payable upon declaration of acceleration pursuant to Section 502.

“Outstanding,” when used with respect to any Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all such Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (a) any such Security theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or the Security Registrar or delivered to the Trustee or the Security Registrar for cancellation;
- (b) any such Security for whose payment at the Maturity thereof money in the necessary amount (or, to the extent that such Security is payable at such Maturity in shares of Common Stock or other securities or property, Common Stock or such other securities or property in the necessary amount, together with, if applicable, cash in lieu of fractional shares or securities) has been theretofore deposited pursuant hereto (other than pursuant to Section 402) with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities, provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;
- (c) any such Security with respect to which the Company has effected defeasance or covenant defeasance pursuant to Section 402, except to the extent provided in Section 402;
- (d) any such Security that has been paid pursuant to Section 306 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, unless there shall have been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to the Trustee that such Security is held by a bona fide purchaser in whose hands such Security is a valid obligation of the Company; and
- (e) any such Security converted or exchanged as contemplated by this Indenture into Common Stock or other securities or property, if the terms of such Security provide for such conversion or exchange pursuant to Section 301;

provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder or are present at a meeting of Holders of Securities for quorum purposes, (i) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that may be counted in making such determination and that shall be deemed to be Outstanding for such purposes shall be equal to the amount of the principal thereof that pursuant to the terms of such Original Issue Discount Security would be declared (or shall have been declared to be) due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration thereof pursuant to Section 502 at the time of such determination, and (ii) the principal amount of any Indexed Security that may be counted in making such determination and that shall be deemed Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the principal face amount of such Indexed Security at original issuance, unless otherwise provided in

6

or pursuant to this Indenture, and (iii) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in making any such determination or relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, only Securities that a Responsible Officer of the Trustee actually knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned that shall have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as

Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee (A) the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and (B) that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or an Affiliate (other than a Trust) of the Company or such other obligor.

"Paying Agent" means any Person authorized by the Company, including the Company, to pay the principal of, or any premium or interest on, any Security on behalf of the Company.

"Person" and "person" mean any individual, corporation, partnership, association, limited liability company, other company, statutory trust, business trust, joint venture, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

"Place of Payment," with respect to any Security, means the place or places where the principal of, or any premium or interest on, such Security are payable as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security.

"Predecessor Security" of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same indebtedness as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 306 in exchange for or in lieu of a lost, destroyed, mutilated or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same indebtedness as the lost, destroyed, mutilated or stolen Security.

"Redemption Date," with respect to any Security or portion thereof to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security.

"Redemption Price," with respect to any Security or portion thereof to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed as determined by or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security.

"Regular Record Date" for the interest payable on any Security on any Interest Payment Date therefor means the date, if any, specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security as the record date for the payment of such interest.

"Responsible Officer" means, when used with respect to the Trustee, any officer within the corporate trust department of the Trustee, including any vice president, assistant vice president, assistant secretary, assistant treasurer, trust officer or any other officer of the Trustee who customarily performs functions similar to those performed by the Persons who at the time shall be such officers, respectively, or to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of such Person's knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject and who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

7

"Securities Act" means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or any successor statute thereto, together with all rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, in each case as amended from time to time.

"Security" or "Securities" means any note or notes, bond or bonds, debenture or debentures, or any other evidence or evidences of indebtedness, as the case may be, authenticated and delivered under this Indenture; provided, however, that, if at any time there is more than one Person acting as Trustee under this Indenture, "Securities," with respect to any such Person, shall mean Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, exclusive, however, of Securities of any Series as to which such Person is not Trustee.

"Security Register" and "Security Registrar" have the respective meanings specified in Section 305.

"Series" means a series of Securities designated or established pursuant to Section 301, all of which Securities in such Series shall have like terms and conditions (other than the principal amount thereof).

"Significant Subsidiary" means any Subsidiary of the Company that is a "significant subsidiary" as defined in Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X promulgated by the Commission (as such rule is in effect on the date of this Indenture).

"Special Record Date" for the payment of any Defaulted Interest on any Security means a date fixed pursuant to Section 307.

"Stated Maturity," with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date established by or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

"Subsidiary" means a corporation, a partnership, business or statutory trust or a limited liability company, a majority of the outstanding voting equity securities or a majority of the voting membership or partnership interests, as the case may be, of which is owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by the Company or by one or more other Subsidiaries of the Company. For the purposes of this definition, "voting equity securities" means securities having voting power for the election of directors, managers, managing partners or trustees, as the case may be, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of stock has voting power by reason of any contingency.

"Trust Indenture Act" means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, and any reference herein to the Trust Indenture Act or a particular provision thereof shall mean such Act or provision, as the case may be, as amended or replaced from time to time or as supplemented from time to time by rules or regulations adopted by the Commission under or in furtherance of the purposes of such Act or provision, as the case may be.

"Trustee" means the Person named as the "Trustee" in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such with respect to one or more Series of Securities pursuant to the applicable

8

provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter "Trustee" shall mean each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder; provided, however, that if at any time there is more than one such Person, "Trustee" shall mean each such Person and as used with respect to the Securities of any Series shall mean the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series.

“United States,” means the United States of America (including the states thereof and the District of Columbia), its territories, its possessions and other areas subject to its jurisdiction; and the term “United States of America” means the United States of America.

“United States Alien,” except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Security, means any Person who, for United States federal income tax purposes, is a foreign corporation, a nonresident alien individual, a nonresident alien fiduciary of a foreign estate or trust, or a foreign partnership one or more of the members of which is, for United States federal income tax purposes, a foreign corporation, a nonresident alien individual or a nonresident alien fiduciary of a foreign estate or trust.

“Vice President,” when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title “Vice President.”

Section 102. *Compliance Certificates and Opinions.*

Except as otherwise expressly provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate stating that all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that, in the opinion of such counsel, all such conditions precedent, if any, have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or request as to which the furnishing of such documents or any of them is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or request, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Section 103. *Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.*

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon an Opinion of Counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the opinion with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based is erroneous. Any such Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company, a governmental official or officers or any other Person or Persons, stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the

Company unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate, opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture or any Security, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

Section 104. *Acts of Holders.*

(1) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by or pursuant to this Indenture to be made, given or taken by Holders may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Holders in person or by an agent duly appointed in writing or a written record of voting at a meeting of the Holders. Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments or record or both are delivered to the Trustee and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. Such instrument or instruments and any such record (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the “Act” of the Holders signing such instrument or instruments or so voting at any such meeting. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent, or of the holding by any Person of a Security, shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 315 of the Trust Indenture Act) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company and any agent of the Trustee or the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section. The record of any meeting of Holders of Securities shall be proved in the manner provided in Section 1406.

Without limiting the generality of this Section 104, unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, a Holder, including a Depositary that is a Holder of a global Security, may make, give or take, by a proxy or proxies, duly appointed in writing, any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities to be made, given or taken by Holders, and a Depositary that is a Holder of a global Security may provide its proxy or proxies to the beneficial owners of interests in any such global Security through such Depositary’s standing instructions and customary practices.

(2) The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved in any reasonable manner that the Trustee deems sufficient and in accordance with such reasonable rules as the Trustee may determine; and the Trustee may in any instance require further proof with respect to any of the matters referred to in this Section.

(3) The ownership, principal amount and serial numbers of Securities held by any Person, and the date of the commencement and the date of the termination of holding the same, shall be proved by the Security Register.

(4) If the Company shall solicit from the Holders of any Securities any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, the Company may at its option (but is not obligated to), by Board Resolution, fix in advance a record date for the determination of Holders of Securities entitled to give such request, demand, authorization,

direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act may be given before or after such record date, but only the Holders of Securities of record at the close of business on such record date shall be deemed to be Holders for the purpose of determining whether Holders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities shall be computed as of such record date; provided that no such authorization, agreement or consent by the Holders of Securities shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date.

(5) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act by the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done or suffered to be done by the Trustee, any Security Registrar, any Paying Agent or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such Act is made upon such Security.

Section 105. *Notices, etc. to Trustee and Company.*

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with,

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company addressed to the attention of its Treasurer at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

Section 106. *Notice to Holders of Securities; Waiver.*

Except as otherwise expressly provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders of Securities of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given to Holders of Securities if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder of a Security affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice.

In any case where notice to Holders of Securities is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder of a Security shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders of Securities. Any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given or provided. In the case by reason of the suspension of regular mail service or by reason of

any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice by mail, then such notification as shall be made with the approval of the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient notification for every purpose hereunder.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders of Securities shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

Section 107. *Language of Notices.*

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver or other Act required or permitted under this Indenture shall be in the English language, except that, if the Company so elects, any published notice may be in an official language of the country of publication.

Section 108. *Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.*

If any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with any duties under any required provision of the Trust Indenture Act imposed hereon by Section 318(c) thereof, such required provision shall control.

Section 109. *Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.*

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

Section 110. *Successors and Assigns.*

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

Section 111. *Separability Clause.*

In case any provision in this Indenture or any Security shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not, to the fullest extent permitted by law, in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 112. *Benefits of Indenture.*

Nothing in this Indenture or any Security, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto, any Security Registrar, any Paying Agent and their respective successors hereunder and the Holders of Securities, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

Section 113. *Governing Law.*

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York applicable to agreements made or instruments entered into and, in each case, performed in said State.

Section 114. *Legal Holidays.*

Unless otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Securities, in any case where any Interest Payment Date, Stated Maturity or Maturity of, or any other day on which a payment is due with respect to, any Security shall be a day that is not a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or any Security other than a provision in any Security or in the Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture establishing the terms of any Security that specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu hereof) payment need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but such payment may be made on the next succeeding day that is a Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, at the Stated Maturity or Maturity or on any such other payment date, as the case may be, and no interest shall accrue on the amount payable on such date or at such time for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date, Stated Maturity, Maturity or other payment date, as the case may be, to the next succeeding Business Day.

Section 115. *Counterparts; Electronic Transmission.*

This Indenture may be executed in several counterparts, each of which shall be an original and all of which shall constitute but one and the same instrument. Any facsimile or electronically transmitted copies hereof or signature hereon shall, for all purposes, be deemed originals.

Section 116. *Immunity of Shareholders, Directors, Officers and Agents of the Company.*

No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture, or in any Security, or because of any indebtedness evidenced thereby, shall be had against any past, present or future shareholder, employee, officer or director, as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor, either directly or through the Company or any predecessor or successor, under any rule of law, statute or constitutional provision or by the enforcement of any assessment or by any legal or equitable proceeding or otherwise, all such liability being expressly waived and released by the acceptance of the Securities by the Holders and as part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities.

Section 117. *Waiver of Jury Trial.*

EACH OF THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS INDENTURE, THE SECURITIES OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

Section 118. *Force Majeure.*

In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations hereunder arising out of or caused by, directly or indirectly, forces beyond its control, including, without limitation, strikes, work stoppages, accidents, acts of war or terrorism, civil or military disturbances, nuclear or natural catastrophes or acts of God, and interruptions, loss or malfunctions of utilities, communications or computer (software and hardware) services; it being understood that the Trustee shall use reasonable efforts that are consistent with accepted practices in the banking industry to resume performance as soon as practicable under the circumstances.

ARTICLE TWO.

SECURITIES FORMS

Section 201. *Forms Generally.*

Each Security and temporary or permanent global Security issued pursuant to this Indenture shall be in the form established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, shall have such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by or pursuant to this Indenture or any indenture supplemental hereto and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officer of the Company executing such Security as evidenced by the execution of such Security.

The Securities shall be issuable in registered form without coupons.

Definitive Securities may be printed, lithographed or engraved or produced by any combination of these methods on a steel engraved border or steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officer of the Company executing such Securities, as evidenced by the execution of such Securities.

Section 202. *Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication.*

Subject to Section 612, the Trustee's certificate of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the Series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

as Trustee

By: _____
Authorized Signatory

14

Section 203. *Securities in Global Form.*

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Securities, the Securities shall not be issuable in global form. If Securities of a Series shall be issuable in temporary or permanent global form, any such Security may provide that it or any number of such Securities shall represent the aggregate amount of all Outstanding Securities of such Series (or such lesser amount as is permitted by the terms thereof) from time to time set forth in such Securities in global form, endorsed thereon or reflected on the books and records of the Trustee and may also provide that the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities represented thereby may from time to time be increased or reduced to reflect exchanges. Any endorsement of any Security in global form to reflect the amount, or any increase or decrease in the amount, or changes in the rights of Holders, of Outstanding Securities represented thereby shall be made in such manner and by such Person or Persons as shall be specified therein or pursuant to Section 301 with respect to such Security or in the Company Order to be delivered pursuant to Section 303 or Section 304 with respect thereto. Subject to the provisions of Section 303 and, if applicable, Section 304, the Trustee shall deliver and redeliver any Security in global form in the manner and upon instructions given by the Person or Persons specified therein or pursuant to Section 301 with respect to such Security or in the applicable Company Order. If a Company Order pursuant to Section 303 or Section 304 has been, or simultaneously is, delivered, any instructions by the Company with respect to a Security in global form shall be in writing but need not be accompanied by or contained in an Officers' Certificate and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this paragraph, in the event a global Security is exchangeable for definitive Securities as provided in Section 305, then, unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such Series, the Trustee shall deliver and redeliver such global Security to the extent necessary to effect such exchanges, shall endorse such global Security to reflect any decrease in the principal amount thereto resulting from such exchanges and shall take such other actions, all as contemplated by Section 305.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 307, unless otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Securities, payment of principal of, and any premium and interest on, any Security in temporary or permanent global form shall be made to the Person or Persons specified therein.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 308 and except as provided in the preceding paragraph, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall treat as the Holder of such principal amount of Outstanding Securities represented by a global Security, the Holder of such global Security in registered form.

ARTICLE THREE.

THE SECURITIES

Section 301. *Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series.*

The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Company may issue up to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of a Series from time to time authorized by or pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions.

15

The Securities may be issued in one or more Series. All Securities of each Series issued under this Indenture shall in all respects be equally and ratably entitled to the benefits hereof with respect to that Series without preference, priority or distinction on account of the actual time or times of the authentication and delivery or Maturity of the Securities of such Series. Unless expressly provided otherwise with respect to a Series, not all Securities of a Series need be issued at the same time, and, unless otherwise provided in the Securities of that Series or in this Indenture, a Series may be reopened and the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a Series may be increased and additional Securities of that Series may be issued up to a maximum aggregate principal amount authorized for that Series, as that maximum aggregate principal amount may be increased from time to time. All Securities of a Series shall rank equally among themselves and with the other existing and future unsecured, unsubordinated indebtedness of the Company.

The Company may from time to time establish one or more Series pursuant to this Indenture. A Series shall be established by (1) the execution and delivery of a Supplemental Indenture or (2) the adoption of a Board Resolution by the Board of Directors establishing that Series. The specific terms and conditions of the Securities of any Series established shall be determined and set either (1) by the Supplemental Indenture that establishes the Series, (2) if the Series is established by a Supplemental Indenture, to the extent that those specific terms and conditions are not determined and set by that Supplemental Indenture, by the adoption of a Board Resolution or Board Resolutions by the Board of Directors and, to the extent that those specific terms and conditions are not determined and set by the Supplemental Indenture or by the adoption of a Board Resolution or Board Resolutions by the Board of Directors or by a combination of those means of determining and setting the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series, by the action of one or more Authorized Officers pursuant to authority to determine and set the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series specifically delegated by the Board of Directors to that Authorized Officer or those Authorized Officers or (3) if the Series is established by action of the Board of Directors, to the extent that those specific terms and conditions are not set by the adoption of a Board Resolution or Board Resolutions by the Board of Directors, by the action of one or more Authorized Officers pursuant to authority to determine and set the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series specifically delegated by the Board of Directors to that Authorized Officer or those Authorized Officers. If the specific terms and specific conditions of the Securities of a Series are determined and set by action of the Board of Directors, that action shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution. If the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series established by action of the Board of Directors are determined and set by an Authorized Officer or Authorized Officers pursuant to authority delegated to them by the Board of Directors, that action shall be evidenced by an Officers' Certificate executed by the Authorized Officer or Authorized Officers determining and setting those terms and conditions, which certificate shall also be attested to by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company. If the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series established by action of the Board of Directors are determined and set by an Authorized Officer or Authorized Officers pursuant to authority delegated to them by the Board of Directors and an Officers' Certificate has been delivered in

Upon a Series being established and the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series being determined and set otherwise than through a Supplemental Indenture, the Company shall cause to be delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate certifying that the Series has been established and the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of the Series have been determined and set and attaching to that Officers' Certificate (1) the Board Resolution establishing the Series, (2) the Board Resolution or Board Resolutions determining and setting the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series or providing for the delegation of authority to one or more Authorized Officers to determine and set the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series and (3) if an Authorized Officer or Authorized Officers has determined and set the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series, attaching the Certificate evidencing the action of that Authorized Officer or those Authorized Officers. The Officers' Certificate that is required to be delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the immediately preceding sentence, may be provided before or at the time of the consummation of the first issuance of Securities of the Series to which the Officers' Certificate relates.

Each Board Resolution of the Company determining and setting the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series, each Officers' Certificate evidencing the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series, and each Supplemental Indenture setting forth the terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series, shall set forth the following information as to the terms and conditions of that Series:

- (1) the title of the Securities of such Series;
- (2) the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such Series to be initially issued and sold by the Company and any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of Securities of such Series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of such Series pursuant to [Section 304](#), [Section 305](#), [Section 306](#), [Section 905](#) or [Section 1107](#) or upon surrender in part of any Security for conversion or exchange into Common Stock or other securities or property pursuant to its terms), and if from time to time the Company may issue additional Securities of such Series or establish additional terms of the Securities of such Series;
- (3) if any of such Securities of such Series are to be issuable in global form, when any of such Securities are to be issuable in global form and (i) whether such Securities are to be issued in temporary or permanent global form or both, (ii) the conditions upon which Securities in definitive form will be issued to beneficial owners of Securities of Series; (iii) whether beneficial owners of interests in any such global Security may exchange such interests for Securities of the same Series and of like tenor and of any authorized form and denomination, and the circumstances under which any such exchanges may occur, if other than in the manner specified in [Section 305](#), (iv) the name of the Depositary with respect to any such global Security and (v) if applicable and in addition to the Persons specified in [Section 305](#), the Person or Persons who shall be entitled to make any endorsements on any such global Security and to give the instructions and take the other actions with respect to such global Security contemplated by the first paragraph of [Section 201](#);

- (4) the date or dates, or the method or methods, if any, by which such date or dates shall be determined, on which the principal and premium, if any, of such Securities is payable;
- (5) the rate or rates at which such Securities shall bear interest, if any, or the method or methods, if any, by which such rate or rates are to be determined, the date or dates, if any, from which such interest shall accrue or the method or methods, if any, by which such date or dates are to be determined, the Interest Payment Dates, if any, on which such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date, if any, for the interest payable on such Securities on any Interest Payment Date, the notice, if any, to Holders regarding the determination of interest on a floating rate Security and the manner of giving such notice, and the basis upon which interest shall be calculated if other than that of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months;
- (6) if in addition to or other than Dallas, Texas, the place or places where the principal of, any premium and interest on, such Securities shall be payable, any of such Securities may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, any of such Securities may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, and notices or demands to or upon the Company in respect of such Securities and this Indenture may be served;
- (7) whether any of the Securities are subject to prepayment and, if so, any premium payable in connection with any such prepayment;
- (8) whether any of such Securities are to be redeemable at the option of the Company and, if so, the date or dates on which, the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the other terms and conditions upon which such Securities may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;
- (9) if the Company is obligated to redeem or purchase any of such Securities pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provision or at the option of any Holder thereof and, if so, the date or dates on which, the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the other terms and conditions upon which such Securities shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation, and any provisions for the remarketing of such Securities so redeemed or purchased;
- (10) the denominations in which any of such Securities shall be issuable if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof;
- (11) whether the Securities of the Series will be convertible into and/or exchangeable for Common Stock or other securities or property, and if so, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable, and any deletions from or modifications or additions to this Indenture to permit or to facilitate the issuance of such convertible or exchangeable Securities or the administration thereof;
- (12) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of any of such Securities that shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to [Section 502](#) or the method by which such portion is to be determined;

(13) if the amount of payments of principal of, or any premium or interest on, such Securities may be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method or methods

18

(which index, formula or method or methods may be based, without limitation, on one or more commodities, equity indices or other indices), and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined and paid or payable;

(14) any affirmative, negative or financial covenants to which the Company shall be subject or obligated to perform so long as any Security of such Series is Outstanding;

(15) any deletions from, modifications of, or additions to, the Events of Default or covenants of the Company with respect to any of such Securities (whether or not such Events of Default or covenants are consistent with the Events of Default or covenants set forth herein), and if Section 1006 shall be applicable with respect to any such additional covenants;

(16) if any one or more of Section 401 relating to satisfaction and discharge, Section 402(2) relating to defeasance or Section 402(3) relating to covenant defeasance shall not be applicable to the Securities of such Series, and any covenants in addition to or other than those specified in Section 402(3) relating to the Securities of such Series that shall be subject to covenant defeasance, if the Company's obligation to repurchase or repay such Securities will be subject to satisfaction and discharge pursuant to Section 401 or to defeasance or covenant defeasance pursuant to Section 402, and, if the Holders of such Securities have the right to convert or exchange such Securities into Common Stock or other securities or property, if the right to effect such conversion or exchange will be subject to satisfaction and discharge pursuant to Section 401 or to defeasance or covenant defeasance pursuant to Section 402, and any deletions from, or modifications or additions to, the provisions of Article Four (including any modification which would permit satisfaction and discharge, defeasance or covenant defeasance to be effected with respect to less than all of the outstanding Securities of such Series) in respect of the Securities of such Series;

(17) if any of such Securities are issuable in global form and are to be issuable in definitive form (whether upon original issue or upon exchange of a temporary Security) only upon receipt of certain certificates or other documents or satisfaction of other conditions, then the form and terms of such certificates, documents or conditions;

(18) if not the Trustee, the identity of each Security Registrar, Paying Agent or Authenticating Agent with respect to such Securities;

(19) the Person to whom any interest on any Security of such Series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name the Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, and the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a temporary global Security will be paid if other than in the manner provided in this Indenture;

(20) any other terms of such Securities and any deletions from or modifications or additions to this Indenture in respect of such Securities.

The terms of the Securities of any Series may provide, without limitation, that the Securities shall be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee on original issue from time to time upon telephonic or written order of persons designated in the Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture, as the case may be, pertaining to such Series of Securities

19

(telephonic instructions to be promptly confirmed in writing by such person) and that such persons are authorized to determine, consistent with such Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture, such terms and conditions of the Securities of such Series as are specified in such Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture. All Securities of any one Series need not be issued at the same time and, if so provided by the Company as contemplated by this Section 301, a Series may be reopened from time to time without the consent of any Holders for issuances of additional Securities of such Series or to establish additional terms of such Series of Securities.

If any of the terms of the Securities of any Series shall be established by action taken by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, the Board Resolution shall be delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of such Series.

Section 302. *Currency; Denominations.*

The principal of, and any premium and interest on, the Securities shall be payable in Dollars. Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, Securities shall be issuable in registered form without coupons in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

Section 303. *Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.*

Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Chairman, Vice Chairman, Chief Executive Officer, its President or one of its Vice Presidents and by its Treasurer, one of its Assistant Treasurers, its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries and may (but need not) have its corporate seal or a facsimile thereof reproduced thereon. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities executed by the Company, to the Trustee for authentication and, provided that the Board Resolution and Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture or indentures with respect to such Securities referred to in Section 301 and a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities have been delivered to the Trustee, the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order and subject to the provisions hereof and of such Securities shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. In authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to

receive, and (subject to Section 315(a) through Section 315(d) of the Trust Indenture Act) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel to the following effect, which Opinion of Counsel may contain such assumptions, qualifications and limitations as such counsel shall deem appropriate:

- (a) the form or forms and terms of such Securities have been established in conformity with Section 201 and Section 301 of this Indenture;

20

- (b) all conditions precedent set forth in Section 201, Section 301 and Section 303 of this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of such Securities have been complied with and that such Securities, when completed by appropriate insertions (if applicable), executed by duly Authorized Officers of the Company, delivered by duly authorized officers of the Company to the Trustee for authentication pursuant to this Indenture, and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as enforcement thereof may be subject to or limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, arrangement, fraudulent conveyance, fraudulent transfer or other similar laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally, and subject to general principles of equity (regardless of whether enforcement is sought in a proceeding in equity or at law).

If all the Securities of any Series are not to be issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver an Opinion of Counsel at the time of issuance of each Security, but such opinion, with such modifications as counsel shall deem appropriate, shall be delivered at or before the time of issuance of the first Security of such Series. After any such first delivery, any separate request by the Company that the Trustee authenticate Securities of such Series for original issue will be deemed to be a certification by the Company that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture relating to authentication and delivery of such Securities continue to have been complied with.

The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate or to cause an Authenticating Agent to authenticate any Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee or if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that such action may not lawfully be taken.

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose, unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for in Section 202 or Section 612 executed by or on behalf of the Trustee or by the Authenticating Agent by the manual signature of one of its authorized signatories. Such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder.

Section 304. *Temporary Securities.*

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities, the Company may execute and deliver to the Trustee and, upon Company Order, the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the manner provided in Section 303, temporary Securities in lieu thereof which are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, in registered form, without coupons, and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other

21

variations as the officers of the Company executing such Securities may determine, as conclusively evidenced by their execution of such Securities. Such temporary Securities may be in global form.

Except in the case of temporary Securities in global form, which shall be exchanged in accordance with the provisions set forth in this Indenture or the provisions established pursuant to Section 301, if temporary Securities are issued, the Company shall cause definitive Securities to be prepared without unreasonable delay. Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, after the preparation of definitive Securities of the same Series and containing terms and provisions that are identical to those of any temporary Securities, such temporary Securities shall be exchangeable for such definitive Securities upon surrender of such temporary Securities at an Office or Agency for such Securities, without charge to any Holder thereof. Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a like principal amount of definitive Securities of authorized denominations of the same Series and containing identical terms and provisions. Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture with respect to a temporary global Security, until so exchanged the temporary Securities of any Series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such Series.

Section 305. *Registration, Transfer and Exchange.*

With respect to the Securities of each Series, if any, the Company shall cause to be kept a register (each such register being herein sometimes referred to as the "Security Register") at an Office or Agency for such Series in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of the Securities of such Series and of transfers of the Securities of such Series. Such Office or Agency shall be the "Security Registrar" for that Series of Securities. Unless otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities, the initial Security Registrar for each Series of Securities shall be as specified in the penultimate paragraph of Section 1002. The Company shall have the right to remove and replace from time to time the Security Registrar for any Series of Securities; provided that no such removal or replacement shall be effective until a successor Security Registrar with respect to such Series of Securities shall have been appointed by the Company and shall have accepted such appointment. In the event that the Trustee shall not be or shall cease to be Security Registrar with respect to a Series of Securities, it shall have the right to examine the Security Register for such Series at all reasonable times. There shall be only one Security Register for each Series of Securities.

Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of any Series at any Office or Agency for such Series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of the same Series denominated as authorized in or pursuant to this Indenture, of a like aggregate principal amount bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding and containing identical terms and provisions.

identical terms and provisions, in any authorized denominations, and of a like aggregate principal amount, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at any Office or Agency for such Series. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities that the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, the global Securities of any Series shall be exchangeable for definitive certificated Securities of such Series only if (i) the Depository for such global Securities notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as a Depository for such global Securities or at any time the Depository for such global Securities ceases to be a clearing agency registered as such under the Exchange Act, if so required by applicable law or regulation, and no successor Depository for such Securities shall have been appointed within 90 days of such notification or of the Company becoming aware of the Depository's ceasing to be so registered, as the case may be, (ii) the Company, in its sole discretion, determines that the Securities of such Series shall no longer be represented by one or more global Securities and executes and delivers to the Trustee a Company Order to the effect that such global Securities shall be so exchangeable, or (iii) an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing with respect to such Securities.

If the beneficial owners of interests in a global Security are entitled to exchange such interests for definitive Securities as the result of an event described in clause (i), (ii) or (iii) of the preceding paragraph, then without unnecessary delay, but in any event not later than the earliest date on which such interests may be so exchanged, the Company shall deliver to the Trustee definitive Securities in such form and denominations as are required by or pursuant to this Indenture, and of the same Series, containing identical terms and in aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such global Security, executed by the Company. On or after the earliest date on which such interests may be so exchanged, such global Security shall be surrendered from time to time by the Depository (or its custodian) as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto (which the Company agrees to deliver), and in accordance with instructions given to the Trustee and the Depository (which instructions shall be in writing but need not be contained in or accompanied by an Officers' Certificate or be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel), as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto to the Trustee, as the Company's agent for such purpose, to be exchanged, in whole or in part, for definitive Securities as described above without charge. The Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery, in exchange for each portion of such surrendered global Security, a like aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of the same Series of authorized denominations and of like tenor as the portion of such global Security to be exchanged, which shall be in the form of registered Securities, and which shall be in such denominations and registered in such names, as shall be specified by the Depository; provided, however, that no such exchanges may occur during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of Securities of the same Series to be redeemed and ending on the relevant Redemption Date. Promptly following any such exchange in part, such global Security shall be returned by the Trustee to such Depository (or its custodian) or such other Depository (or its custodian) referred to above in accordance with the instructions of the Company referred to above, and the Trustee shall endorse such global Security to reflect the decrease in the principal amount thereof resulting from such exchange. If a Security is issued in exchange for any portion of a global Security after the close of business at the Office or Agency for such Security where

such exchange occurs on or after (i) any Regular Record Date for such Security and before the opening of business at such Office or Agency on the next Interest Payment Date, or (ii) any Special Record Date for such Security and before the opening of business at such Office or Agency on the related proposed date for payment of interest or Defaulted Interest, as the case may be, interest shall not be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, in respect of such Security, but shall be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, only to the Person to whom interest in respect of such portion of such global Security shall be payable in accordance with the provisions of this Indenture.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company evidencing the same debt and entitling the Holders thereof to the same benefits under this Indenture as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange or redemption shall (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar for such Security) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar for such Security duly executed by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, or any redemption or repayment of Securities, or any conversion or exchange of Securities for other types of securities or property, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 304, Section 905 or Section 1107, or upon surrender in part of any Security for conversion or exchange into Common Stock or other securities or property pursuant to its terms, in each case not involving any transfer.

Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, the Company shall not be required (i) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the selection for redemption of Securities of like tenor and terms and of the same Series under Section 1103 and ending at the close of business on the day of such selection, or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security, or portion thereof, so selected for redemption, except in the case of any Security to be redeemed in part, the portion thereof not to be redeemed.

The Trustee shall have no obligation or duty to monitor, determine or inquire as to compliance with any restrictions on transfer imposed under this Indenture or under applicable law with respect to any transfer of any interest in any Security (including any transfers between or among Depository participants or beneficial owners of interests in any global Security) other than to require delivery of such certificates and other documentation or evidence as are expressly required by, and to do so if and when expressly required by the terms of, this Indenture, and to examine the same to determine substantial compliance as to form with the express requirements hereof.

Neither the Trustee nor any Paying Agent shall have any responsibility for any actions taken or not taken by the Depository.

Section 306. *Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.*

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section 306, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same Series containing identical terms and of like principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there be delivered to the Company and to the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security, and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute and, upon the Company's request the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same Series containing identical terms and of like principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 306, in case the outstanding principal balance of any mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute a separate obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of such Series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section, as amended or supplemented pursuant to this Indenture with respect to particular Securities or generally, shall (to the extent lawful) be exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

Section 307. *Payment of Interest; Rights to Interest Preserved.*

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, any interest on any Security that shall be payable, and are punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name such Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered as of the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, any interest on any Security

that shall be payable, but shall not be punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for such Security (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder thereof on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder; and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Person in whose name such Security (or a Predecessor Security thereof) shall be registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit on or prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when so deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Person entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this Clause provided. Thereupon, the Company shall fix or cause to be fixed a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Company (or, upon the written request of the Company, the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company), shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Holder of such Security (or a Predecessor Security thereof) at the Holder's address as it appears in the Security Register not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. The Company may, in its discretion, in the name and at the expense of the Company cause a similar notice to be published at least once in an Authorized Newspaper of general circulation in the City of Dallas, Texas, but such publication shall not be a condition precedent to the establishment of such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Person in whose name such Security (or a Predecessor Security thereof) shall be registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Security may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this Clause, such payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities of any particular Series, at the option of the Company, interest on Securities that bear interest may be paid by mailing a check to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register or by transfer to an account maintained by the payee with a bank located in the United States of America.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section and Section 305, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any

other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

Section 308. *Persons Deemed Owners.*

Prior to due presentment of a Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name such Security is registered in the Security Register as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of, any premium and (subject to Section 305 and Section 307) interest on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not any payment with respect to such Security shall be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee or any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

No holder of any beneficial interest in any global Security held on its behalf by a Depository shall have any rights under this Indenture with respect to such global Security, and such Depository may be treated by the Company, the Trustee, and any agent of the Company or the Trustee as the owner of such global Security for all purposes whatsoever. None of the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of a global Security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by the applicable Depository, as a Holder, with respect to a global Security or impair, as between such Depository and the owners of beneficial interests in such global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such Depository (or its nominee) as the Holder of such global Security.

Section 309. *Cancellation.*

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, registration of transfer, exchange or conversion or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee, and any such Securities, as well as Securities surrendered directly to the Trustee for any such purpose, shall be cancelled promptly by the Trustee. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and all Securities so delivered shall be cancelled promptly by the Trustee. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by or pursuant to this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be disposed of in accordance with its procedure for the disposition of cancelled Securities, and the Trustee, upon the written request of the Company, shall deliver to the Company a certificate of such disposition, or if directed by a Company Order, returned to the Company.

Section 310. *Computation of Interest.*

Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or in the Securities of any

Series, interest on the Securities shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

ARTICLE FOUR.

SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE

Section 401. *Satisfaction and Discharge.*

Unless, pursuant to Section 301, the provisions of this Section 401 shall not be applicable with respect to the Securities of any Series, upon the direction of the Company by a Company Order, this Indenture shall cease to be of further effect with respect to any Series of Securities specified in such Company Order, and the Trustee, on receipt of a Company Order, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such Series, when

- (1) either
 - (a) all Securities of such Series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such Series that have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 306 and (ii) Securities of such Series for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 1003) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or
 - (b) all Securities of such Series and not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (i) have become due and payable, or (ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or (iii) if redeemable at the option of the Company, are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for such purpose, money in Dollars in an amount sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including the principal of, and any premium and interest on such Securities, to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Maturity thereof, as the case may be;
- (2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to the Outstanding Securities of such Series; and
- (3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such Series have been complied with.

for the Series as to which the Indenture is to be discharged shall be required to execute an instrument acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture only if requested to do so with respect to Securities of such Series as to which it is Trustee and if the other conditions thereto are met.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to any Series of Securities, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under Section 607 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (b) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Company and the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series under Section 305, Section 306, Section 403, Section 404, Section 1002 and Section 1003, any rights of Holders of the Securities of such Series (unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of such Series) to require the Company to repurchase or repay, and any rights of Holders of the Securities of such Series (unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of such Series) to convert or exchange, and the obligations of the Company to convert or exchange, such Securities into Common Stock or other securities or property, shall survive.

Section 402. *Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance.*

(1) Unless, pursuant to Section 301, either or both of (i) defeasance of the Securities of or within a Series under clause (2) of this Section 402 or (ii) covenant defeasance of the Securities of or within a Series under clause (3) of this Section 402 shall not be applicable with respect to the Securities of such Series, then such provisions, together with the other provisions of this Section 402 (with such modifications thereto as may be specified pursuant to Section 301 with respect to any Securities), shall be applicable to such Securities, and the Company may at its option by Board Resolution, at any time, with respect to the Securities of or within such Series, elect to have Section 402(2) or Section 402(3) be applied to such Outstanding Securities upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Section 402. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of any Series, defeasance under clause (2) of this Section 402 and covenant defeasance under clause (3) of this Section 402 may be effected only with respect to all, and not less than all, of the Outstanding Securities of any Series. To the extent that the terms of any Security established in or pursuant to this Indenture permit the Company or any Holder thereof to extend the date on which any payment of principal of, or premium, if any, or interest, if any, on, such Security is due and payable, then unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301, the right to extend such date shall terminate upon defeasance or covenant defeasance, as the case may be.

(2) Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section 402(2) with respect to any Securities of or within a Series, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations with respect to such Outstanding Securities on the date the conditions set forth in clause (4) of this Section 402 are satisfied (hereinafter, "defeasance"). For this purpose, such defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Outstanding Securities, which shall thereafter be deemed to be "Outstanding" only for the purposes of clause (5) of this Section 402 and the other Sections of this Indenture referred to in clauses (i) through (iv) of this paragraph, and to have satisfied all of its other obligations under such Securities and this Indenture insofar as such Securities are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the

Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (i) the rights of Holders of such Outstanding Securities to receive, solely (except as provided in clause (ii) below) from the trust fund described in clause (4)(a) of this Section 402 and as more fully set forth in this Section 402 and Section 403, payments in respect of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on, such Securities when such payments are due, (ii) the obligations of the Company and the Trustee with respect to such Securities under Section 305, Section 306, Section 1002 and Section 1003, any rights of Holders of such Securities (unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of such Series) to require the Company to repurchase or repay, and any rights of Holders of such Securities (unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of such Series) to convert or exchange, and the obligations of the Company to convert or exchange, such Securities into Common Stock or other securities or property, (iii) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder and (iv) this Section 402 and Section 403 and Section 404. The Company may exercise its option under this Section 402(2) notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under Section 402(3) with respect to such Securities.

(3) Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section 402(3) with respect to any Securities of or within a Series, the Company shall be released from its obligations under clauses (ii) and (iii) of Section 1004 and under Section 1005, Section 1006 and Section 1007 and any other covenant applicable to such Securities with respect to such Securities shall cease to be applicable to such Securities on and after the date the conditions set forth in clause (4) of this Section 402 are satisfied (hereinafter, "covenant defeasance"), and such Securities shall thereafter be deemed to be not "Outstanding" for the purposes of any direction, waiver, consent or declaration or Act of Holders (and the consequences of any thereof) in connection with any such covenant, but shall continue to be deemed "Outstanding" for all other purposes hereunder. For this purpose, such covenant defeasance means that with respect to such Outstanding Securities, the Company may omit to comply with, and shall have no liability in respect of, any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such Section or any such other covenant, whether directly or indirectly, by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or such other covenant or by reason of reference in any such Section or such other covenant to any other provision herein or in any other document and such omission to comply shall not constitute a default or an Event of Default under Section 501(4) or Section 501(8) or otherwise, as the case may be, but, except as specified above, the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby.

(4) The following shall be the conditions to application of clause (2) or (3) of this Section 402 to any Outstanding Securities of or within a Series:

- (a) The Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of Section 608 who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Section 402 applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, (1) an amount in Dollars or (2) Government Obligations that through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any

payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such Securities, money or (3) a combination thereof, in any case, in an amount, sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of such principal and interest, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, (y) the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on, such Outstanding Securities on the Stated Maturity of such principal or installment of principal or interest or the applicable Redemption Date, as the case may be, and (z) any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments applicable to such Outstanding Securities on the day on which such payments are due and payable in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and of such Securities.

- (b) Such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or by which it is bound.
- (c) No Event of Default or event which with notice or lapse of time or both would become an Event of Default with respect to such Securities shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit, and, solely in the case of defeasance under Section 402(2), no Event of Default with respect to such Securities under clause (5) or (6) of Section 501 or event which with notice or lapse of time or both would become an Event of Default with respect to such Securities under clause (5) or (6) of Section 501 shall have occurred and be continuing at any time during the period ending on and including the 91st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition to defeasance under Section 402(2) shall not be deemed satisfied until the expiration of such period).
- (d) In the case of defeasance pursuant to Section 402(2), the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an opinion of independent counsel reasonably acceptable to the Trustee stating that (x) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (y) since the date of this Indenture there has been a change in applicable federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion of independent counsel shall confirm that, the Holders of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such defeasance had not occurred; or, in the case of covenant defeasance pursuant to Section 402(3), the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an opinion of independent counsel reasonably acceptable to the Trustee to the effect that the Holders of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such covenant defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the

31

same times as would have been the case if such covenant defeasance had not occurred.

- (e) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent to the defeasance or covenant defeasance, as the case may be, under this Indenture have been complied with.
- (f) If the moneys or Government Obligations or combination thereof, as the case may be, deposited under clause (a) above are sufficient to pay the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on, such Securities provided such Securities are redeemed on a particular Redemption Date, the Company shall have given the Trustee irrevocable instructions to redeem such Securities on such date and to provide notice of such redemption to Holders as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture.
- (g) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Section 402(4), such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall be effected in compliance with any additional or substitute terms, conditions or limitations that may be imposed on the Company in connection therewith pursuant to Section 301.

(5) Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money and Government Obligations (or other property as may be provided pursuant to Section 301) (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee—collectively for purposes of this Section 402(5) and Section 403, the "Trustee") pursuant to clause (4)(a) of Section 402 in respect of any Outstanding Securities of any Series shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (other than the Company or any Subsidiary or Affiliate of the Company acting as Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal (and premium, if any) and interest but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge, imposed on or assessed against the Government Obligations deposited pursuant to this Section 402 or the principal or interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of such Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this Section 402 to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or Government Obligations (or other property and any proceeds therefrom) held by it as provided in clause (4)(a) of this Section 402 which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect a defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, in accordance with this Section 402.

32

Section 403. *Application of Trust Money.*

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money and Government Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 401 or Section 402 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities subject to discharge under Section 401

or defeasance or covenant defeasance under Section 402, and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal, premium and interest for whose payment such money has or Government Obligations have been deposited with or received by the Trustee; but such money and Government Obligations need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

Section 404. *Reinstatement.*

If the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee appointed pursuant to Section 402(4)(a)) or any Paying Agent is unable to apply any moneys or Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 401(1) or Section 402(4)(a) to pay any principal of or premium, if any, or interest, if any, on, the Securities of any Series by reason of any legal proceeding or any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the Company's obligations under this Indenture and the Securities of such Series shall be revived and reinstated as though no such deposit had occurred, until such time as the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such moneys and Government Obligations to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on the Securities of such Series as contemplated by Section 401 or Section 402 as the case may be, and Section 403; provided, however, that if the Company makes any payment of the principal of or premium, if any, or interest if any, on the Securities of such Series following the reinstatement of its obligations as aforesaid, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the funds held by the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) or Paying Agent.

ARTICLE FIVE.

REMEDIES

Section 501. *Events of Default.*

"Event of Default," wherever used in this Indenture with respect to Securities of any Series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body) unless such event is specifically deleted or modified in or pursuant to the supplemental indenture, Board Resolution or Officers' Certificate establishing the terms of such Series pursuant to this Indenture:

(1) default in the payment of any interest on any of the Securities of such Series when such interest becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or

33

(2) default in the payment of any principal of or premium, if any, on any of the Securities of such Series when due (whether at Maturity or otherwise and whether payable in cash or in shares of Common Stock or other securities or property); or

(3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment or payment under any analogous provision when due with respect to any of the Securities of such Series; or

(4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture or any Security of such Series (other than a covenant or warranty for which the consequences of breach or nonperformance are addressed elsewhere in this Section 501 or a covenant or warranty which has expressly been included in this Indenture, whether or not by means of a supplemental indenture, solely for the benefit of Securities of a Series other than such Series), and continuance of such default or breach (without such default or breach having been waived in accordance of the provisions of this Indenture) for a period of 90 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee by the Holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder; or

(5) the entry by a court having jurisdiction in the premises of (A) a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or (B) a decree or order adjudging the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company a bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company under any applicable federal or state law, or appointing a custodian, receiver, conservator, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company or of any substantial part of the property of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of the affairs of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company, and the continuance of any such decree or order for relief unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days; or

(6) the commencement by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company of a voluntary case or proceeding under any applicable federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or of any other case or proceeding to be adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent, or the consent by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company to the entry of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable federal or state bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company, or the filing by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under any applicable federal or state law, or the consent by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a custodian, receiver, conservator, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or similar official of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company or of any

34

substantial part of the property of the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company, or the making by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the taking of corporate action by the Company or any Significant Subsidiary of the Company in furtherance of any such action; or

(7) default in the delivery of any shares of Common Stock, together with cash in lieu of fractional shares, or any other securities or property (including cash) when required to be delivered upon conversion of any convertible Security of such Series or upon the exchange of any Security of such Series which is exchangeable for other securities or property, and continuance of such default for a period of 10 days; or

(8) any other Event of Default provided in or pursuant to this Indenture with respect to Securities of such Series.

Section 502. *Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.*

If an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default specified in clause (5) or (6) of Section 501) with respect to Securities of any Series occurs and is continuing, then either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series may declare the principal of all the Securities of such Series, or such lesser amount as may be provided for in the Securities of such Series, and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, thereon to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by the Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal or such lesser amount, as the case may be, and such accrued and unpaid interest shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in clause (5) or (6) of Section 501 occurs, then the principal amount of all of the Securities of such Series Outstanding, or such lesser amount as may be provided for in the Securities of such Series, and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all Securities of all Series Outstanding shall become and be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustee or any Holder of the Securities of such Series.

At any time after the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to Securities of one or more Series and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by the Trustee as provided below in this Article Five, the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all affected Series (voting as one class), by written notice to the Company and the Trustee may waive all defaults with respect to all affected Series, and may rescind and annul the consequences of the Event of Default, if:

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum of money sufficient to pay (or, to the extent that the terms of the Securities of such Series established pursuant to Section 301 expressly provide for payment to be made in shares of Common Stock or other securities or property, shares of Common Stock or other securities or property, together with cash in lieu of fractional shares or securities, sufficient to pay)

(a) all overdue installments of any interest on any Securities of such Series that have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration,

35

(b) the principal of and any premium on any Securities of such Series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, interest thereon at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, provided for in or with respect to such Securities, or, if no such rate or rates are so provided, at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, of interest borne by such Securities,

(c) to the extent permitted by applicable law, interest upon installments of any interest, if any, which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, provided for in or with respect to such Securities, or, if no such rate or rates are so provided, at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, of interest borne by such Securities, and

(d) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 607; and

(2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of all affected Series other than the nonpayment of the principal of, or any premium and interest on, Securities of the affected Series that shall have become due solely by such acceleration, shall have been cured or waived as provided in Section 513.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

For all purposes under this Indenture, if a portion of the principal of any Original Issue Discount Securities shall have been accelerated and declared due and payable pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, then, from and after the date of such Event of Default, unless such Event of Default has been rescinded and annulled as provided above, the principal amount of such Original Issue Discount Securities shall be deemed, for all purposes under this Indenture, to be such portion of the principal as shall be due and payable as a result of such acceleration, and the payment of such portion of the principal as shall be due and payable as a result of such acceleration, together with interest, if any, on such portion and all other amounts owing under such Original Issue Discount Security, shall constitute payment in full of such Original Issue Discount Securities.

Section 503. *Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.*

The Company covenants that if:

(1) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days,

(2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at its Maturity, or

36

(3) default is made in the making or satisfaction of any sinking fund or analogous obligation when the same becomes due pursuant to the terms of any Security, the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable with respect to such Securities, with interest upon the overdue principal, any premium and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, upon any overdue installments of interest at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, provided for or with respect to such Securities or, if no such rate or rates are so provided, at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, of interest borne by such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount of money

as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due to the Trustee under Section 607.

If the Company fails to pay the money it is required to pay the Trustee pursuant to the preceding paragraph forthwith upon the demand of the Trustee, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities and collect the monies adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any Series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such Series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

Section 504. *Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.*

In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or such other obligor or their creditors, the Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal of the Securities of a Series shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether the Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of any overdue principal, premium or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise,

(1) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount, or such lesser amount as may be provided for in the Securities of such Series, of the principal and any premium or interest owing and unpaid in respect of such Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents or counsel) and of the Holders of such Securities allowed in such judicial proceeding, and

(2) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same; and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator,

37

sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is authorized by each Holder of Securities to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders of Securities and to pay to the Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 607.

No provision of this Indenture shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder of a Security any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder, or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding; provided, however, the Trustee may vote on behalf of the Holders for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar official and may be a member of a creditors or other similar committee.

Section 505. *Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.*

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production of such Securities in any related proceeding, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements, and advances of the Trustee, its agents, and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

Section 506. *Application of Money Collected.*

Any money collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article Five or, after an Event of Default, any money or other property distributable in respect of the Company's obligations under this Indenture shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal or any premium or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation on such Securities of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender of such Securities if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee and any predecessor Trustee under Section 607;

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon the Securities for principal and any premium and interest in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the aggregate amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium, interest; and

THIRD: The balance, if any, to the Person or Persons entitled thereto.

Section 507. *Limitation on Suits.*

No Holder of any Security of any Series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or

38

trustee, or for any other remedy under this Indenture, unless:

- (1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that Series;
- (2) the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that Series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee under the Indenture;
- (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, expenses, and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- (4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request, and offer of indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and
- (5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that Series; it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb, or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner provided in this Indenture and for the equal and ratable benefit of all of such Holders.

Section 508. *Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.*

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and any premium and (subject to [Section 305](#) and [Section 307](#)) any interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturity or Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the Redemption Date) and, in the case of any Security that is convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or property, to convert or exchange, as the case may be, such Security in accordance with its terms), and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

Section 509. *Restoration of Rights and Remedies.*

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions under this Indenture and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

39

Section 510. *Rights and Remedies Cumulative.*

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost, or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of [Section 306](#), no right or remedy conferred in this Indenture upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given under this Indenture or now or in the future existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

Section 511. *Delay or Omission Not Waiver.*

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of or acquiescence in any such Event of Default. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

Section 512. *Control by Holders.*

The Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series shall have the right to direct the time, method, and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, with respect to the Securities of such Series, provided that

- (1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture or with the Securities of any Series,
- (2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction, and
- (3) the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer or Officers of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed would involve the Trustee in personal liability.

Section 513. *Waiver of Past Defaults.*

Subject to [Section 502](#), the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such Series waive any past default under this Indenture with respect to such Series and its consequences, except a default (1) in the payment of the principal of, or any premium or interest on, any Security of such Series, or (2) in respect of a covenant or provision of this Indenture which under [Article Nine](#) cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such affected Series.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising from such default shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any consequent right.

40

Section 514. *Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws.*

The Company covenants that (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law or any usury law or any other law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which would prohibit or forgive the Company from paying all or any portion of the principal of or premium, if any, or interest, if any, on any Securities as contemplated herein and therein or which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture or the Securities; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee or the Holders, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

Section 515. *Undertaking for Costs.*

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Securities by his acceptance of such Securities shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered, or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorney's fees and expenses, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section 515 shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Company, to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Holder, or group of Holders, holding in the aggregate more than 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series, or to any suit instituted by any Holder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Securities on or after the Stated Maturity or Maturities expressed in such Securities (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date) or for the enforcement of the right, if any, to convert or exchange any Security into Common Stock or other securities in accordance with its terms).

ARTICLE SIX.

THE TRUSTEE

Section 601. *Duties of Trustee.*

- (1) If an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee will exercise such of the rights and powers vested in it hereby, and use the same degree of care and skill in its exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of such person's own affairs.
- (2) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default:
 - (a) the duties of the Trustee will be determined solely by the express provisions hereof and the Trustee need perform only those duties that are specifically set

41

forth herein and no others, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

- (b) in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements hereof. However, the Trustee will examine the certificates and opinions to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements hereof.
- (3) Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision hereof that in any way relates to the Trustee is subject to paragraphs (1) and (2) of this Section 601 and to Section 602.
- (4) No provision hereof will require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or incur any liability.
- (5) The Trustee will not be liable for interest on any money received by it except as the Trustee may agree in writing with the Company.

Section 602. *Certain Rights of Trustee.*

Subject to Section 315(a) through Section 315(d) of the Trust Indenture Act:

- (1) the Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note or other paper or document reasonably believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;
- (2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or a Company Order (in each case, other than delivery of any Security, to the Trustee for authentication and delivery pursuant to Section 303 which shall be sufficiently evidenced as provided therein) and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;
- (3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence shall be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers' Certificate;
- (4) before the Trustee acts or refrains from acting, it may require an Officers' Certificate or an Opinion of Counsel or both. The Trustee will not be liable for any action it takes or omits to take in good faith in reliance on such Officers' Certificate or Opinion of Counsel. The Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel will be full and complete authorization and protection from liability in respect of

-
- (5) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by or pursuant to this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders of Securities of any Series pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, expenses and liabilities that might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction;
- (6) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine, during business hours and upon reasonable notice, the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney, at the sole cost of the Company and shall incur no liability or additional liability of any kind by reason of such inquiry or investigation;
- (7) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;
- (8) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and reasonably believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;
- (9) in no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for special, indirect or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including, but not limited to, loss of profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action;
- (10) the Trustee shall not be required to take notice or be deemed to have notice of any Event of Default, except failure by the Company to pay or cause to be made any of the payments required to be made to the Trustee, unless a Responsible Officer shall be specifically notified by a writing of such Default by the Company or by the Holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities then outstanding delivered to the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee and in the absence of such notice so delivered the Trustee may conclusively assume no Default exists.
- (11) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder; and
- (12) the Trustee may request that the Company deliver a certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture.

Section 603. *Notice of Defaults.*

Within 90 days after the Trustee is notified of the occurrence of any default hereunder with respect to the Securities of any Series, the Trustee shall transmit by mail to all Holders of Securities of such Series entitled to receive reports pursuant to Section 703(3), notice of such default hereunder known to the Trustee, unless such default shall have been cured or waived; provided, however, that, except in the case of a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any), or interest, if any, on, any Security of such Series, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the best interest of the Holders of Securities of such Series; and provided, further, that in the case of any default of the character specified in Section 501(4) or Section 501(8) with respect to Securities of such Series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 30 days after the occurrence thereof. For the purpose of this Section, the term "default" means any event that is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such Series.

Section 604. *Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.*

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificate of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities, except that the Trustee represents that it is duly authorized to execute and deliver this Indenture, authenticate the Securities and perform its obligations hereunder and that the statements made by it in a Statement of Eligibility on Form T-1 supplied to the Company are true and accurate, subject to the qualifications set forth therein. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of the Securities or the proceeds thereof. The Trustee will not be responsible for and makes no representation as to the validity or adequacy of this Indenture or the Securities, it shall not be accountable for the Company's use of the proceeds from the Securities or any money paid to the Company or upon the Company's direction under any provision hereof, it will not be responsible for the use or application of any money received by any Paying Agent other than the Trustee, and it will not be responsible for any statement or recital herein or any statement in the Securities or any other document in connection with the sale of the Securities or pursuant to this Indenture other than its certificate of authentication.

Section 605. *May Hold Securities.*

The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other Person that may be an agent of the Trustee or the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to Section 310(b) and Section 311 of the Trust Indenture Act, may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights that it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other Person.

Except as provided in Section 403 and Section 1003, money held by the Trustee in trust

hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law and shall be held uninvested. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed in writing with the Company.

Section 607. *Compensation and Reimbursement.*

The Company agrees:

- (1) to pay to the Trustee from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by the Trustee hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);
- (2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to the Trustee's negligence or bad faith; and
- (3) to indemnify each of the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee and their agents for, and to hold them harmless against, any loss, liability or reasonable expense (including, without limitation, the reasonable fees and disbursements of the Trustee's agents, legal counsel, accountants and experts) and including taxes (other than taxes based upon, measured by or determined by the income of the Trustee), incurred without negligence or bad faith on their part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending themselves against any claim (whether asserted by the Company, or any Holder or any other Person) or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of their powers or duties hereunder, or in connection with enforcing the provisions of this Section, except to the extent that any such loss, liability or expense was due to the Trustee's negligence or bad faith.

As security for the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Section, the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities of any Series upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of, or premium or interest on Securities. Such lien will survive the satisfaction and discharge hereof.

Any compensation or expense incurred by the Trustee after a default specified by Section 501(5) or Section 501(6) is intended to constitute an expense of administration under any then applicable bankruptcy or insolvency law. "Trustee" for purposes of this Section 607 shall include any predecessor Trustee, but the negligence or bad faith of any Trustee shall not affect the rights of any other Trustee under this Section 607. The provisions of this Section 607 shall, to the extent permitted by law, survive any termination of this Indenture (including, without limitation, termination pursuant to any Bankruptcy Laws) and the resignation or removal of the Trustee.

Section 608. *Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.*

- (1) There shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder that is a corporation, organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any state thereof or the District of

Columbia, eligible under Section 310(a)(1) of the Trust Indenture Act to act as trustee under an indenture qualified under the Trust Indenture Act and that has a combined capital and surplus (computed in accordance with Section 310(a)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act) of at least \$50,000,000 subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority. If at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.

- (2) The following indenture shall be considered specifically described herein for purposes of clause (i) of the proviso contained in Section 310(b)(1) of the Trust Indenture Act: Senior Debt Indenture dated as of [·] between the Company and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee; and, pursuant to Section 310(b)(1)(C)(i) of the Trust Indenture Act, unless otherwise ordered by the Commission, an event of default by the Company under this Indenture will not disqualify the Trustee under this Indenture because it is the trustee under such other indenture.

Section 609. *Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.*

- (1) No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article Six shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee pursuant to Section 610.
- (2) The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more Series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee required by Section 610 shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may, at the Company's expense, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to such Series.
- (3) The Trustee may be removed at any time with respect to the Securities of any Series by Act of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series, delivered to the Trustee and the Company.
- (4) If at any time:

- (a) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the obligations imposed upon it under Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with respect to Securities of any Series after written request therefor by the Company or any Holder of a Security of such Series who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such Series for at least six months, or
- (b) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 608 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or any such Holder, or
- (c) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, (i) the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities or the Securities of such Series, or

46

(ii) subject to Section 315(e) of the Trust Indenture Act, any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such Series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities of such Series and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.

(5) If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more Series, the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those Series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such Series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular Series) and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 610. If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 610, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders of Securities and accepted appointment in the manner required by Section 610, any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such Series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series.

(6) The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series by mailing written notice of such event by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to the Holders of Securities, if any, of such Series as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

Section 610. *Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.*

(1) Upon the appointment hereunder of any successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties hereunder of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or such successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee, upon payment of its charges, shall execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and, subject to Section 1003, shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such

47

successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder, subject nevertheless to its claim, if any, provided for in Section 607.

(2) Upon the appointment hereunder of any successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) Series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and such successor Trustee shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (i) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, such successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those Series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (ii) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those Series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (iii) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust, that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee and that no Trustee shall be responsible for any notice given to, or received by, or any act or failure to act on the part of any other Trustee hereunder, and, upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture, the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein, such retiring Trustee shall have no further responsibility for the exercise of rights and powers or for the performance of the duties and obligations vested in the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of that or those Series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates other than as hereinafter expressly set forth, and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those Series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or such successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee, upon payment of its charges with respect to the Securities of that or those Series to which the appointment of such successor relates and subject to Section 1003 shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee, to the extent contemplated by such supplemental indenture, the property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those Series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, subject to its claim, if any, provided for in Section 607.

(3) Upon request of any Person appointed hereunder as a successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (1) or (2) of this Section, as the

case may be.

(4) No Person shall accept its appointment hereunder as a successor Trustee unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Person shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

48

Section 611. *Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.*

Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder (provided that such corporation shall otherwise be qualified and eligible under this Article), without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated but not delivered by the Trustee then in office, any such successor to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities. In case any Securities shall not have been authenticated by such predecessor Trustee, any such successor Trustee may authenticate and deliver such Securities in either its own name or that of its predecessor Trustee.

Section 612. *Appointment of Authenticating Agent.*

The Trustee may appoint one or more Authenticating Agents acceptable to the Company with respect to one or more Series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of that or those Series issued upon original issue, exchange, registration of transfer, partial redemption, partial repayment, partial conversion or exchange for Common Stock or other securities or property, or pursuant to [Section 306](#), and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent.

Each Authenticating Agent shall be reasonably acceptable to the Company and, except as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, shall at all times be a corporation that would be permitted by the Trust Indenture Act to act as trustee under an indenture qualified under the Trust Indenture Act, is authorized under applicable law and by its charter to act as an Authenticating Agent and has a combined capital and surplus (computed in accordance with Section 310(a)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act) of at least \$50,000,000. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall be the successor of such Authenticating Agent hereunder, provided such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and the

49

Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent that shall be acceptable to the Company and shall mail written notice of such appointment by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to all Holders of Securities, if any, of the Series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent shall serve, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register. Any successor Authenticating Agent, upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder, shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this [Section 612](#).

The Company agrees to pay each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section. If the Trustee makes such payments, it shall be entitled to be reimbursed for such payments, subject to the provisions of [Section 607](#).

The provisions of [Section 308](#), [Section 604](#) and [Section 605](#) shall be applicable to each Authenticating Agent.

If an Authenticating Agent is appointed with respect to one or more Series of Securities pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such Series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to or in lieu of the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternate certificate of authentication in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the Series designated herein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

as Trustee

By:
As Authenticating Agent

By:
Authorized Signatory

If all of the Securities of any Series may not be originally issued at one time, and if the Trustee does not have an office capable of authenticating Securities upon original issuance located in a Place of Payment where the Company desires to have Securities of such Series authenticated upon original issuance, the Trustee, if so requested in writing (which writing need not be accompanied by or contained in an Officers' Certificate of the Company), shall appoint in accordance with this Section an Authenticating Agent having an office in a Place of Payment designated by the Company with respect to such Series of Securities.

ARTICLE SEVEN.

HOLDERS LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

Section 701. *Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.*

In accordance with Section 312(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Company shall furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee

(1) semi-annually with respect to Securities of each Series not later than and of the year or upon such other dates as are set forth in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto authorizing such Series, a list, in each case in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of Holders as of the applicable date, and

(2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished,

provided, however, that so long as the Trustee is the Security Registrar no such list shall be required to be furnished.

Section 702. *Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders.*

The Trustee shall comply with the obligations imposed upon it pursuant to Section 312 of the Trust Indenture Act.

Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or any Security Registrar shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any such information as to the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities in accordance with Section 312(c) of the Trust Indenture Act, regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustee shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

Section 703. *Reports by Trustee.*

(1) Within 60 days after July 15 of each year commencing with the first July 15 following the first issuance of Securities pursuant to Section 301, if required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall transmit, pursuant to Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act, a brief report dated as of such July 15 with respect to any of the events specified in said Section 313(a) and Section 313(b)(2) that may have occurred since the later of the immediately preceding July 15 and the date of this Indenture.

(2) The Trustee shall transmit the reports required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act at the times specified therein.

(3) Reports pursuant to this Section shall be transmitted in the manner and to the Persons required by Section 313(c) and Section 313(d) of the Trust Indenture Act.

Section 704. *Reports by Company.*

(1) The Company, pursuant to Section 314(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, shall:

(a) file with the Trustee, within 15 days after the Company files the same with the Commission, copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) that the Company may be required to file with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; or, if the Company is not required to file information, documents or reports pursuant to either of said Sections, then it shall file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such of the supplementary and periodic information, documents and reports that may be required pursuant to Section 13 of the Exchange Act in respect of a security listed and registered on a national securities exchange as may be prescribed from time to time in such rules and regulations;

(b) file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such additional certificates, information, documents and reports with respect to compliance by the Company, with the conditions and covenants of this Indenture as may be required from time to time by such rules and regulations; and

(c) transmit within 30 days after the filing thereof with the Trustee, in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act, such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed by the Company pursuant to paragraphs (1) and (2) of this Section as may be required by rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission. Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates).

(2) The Company intends to file the reports referred to in Section 704(1) with the Commission in electronic form pursuant to Regulation S-T of the Commission using the Commission's Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval system. Compliance with the foregoing, or any successor electronic system approved by the Commission, shall constitute delivery by the Company of such reports to the Trustee and Holders in compliance with the provision of Section 704(1) and TIA Section 314(a). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, the Trustee shall have no duty to search for or obtain any electronic or other filings that the Company makes with the Commission, regardless of whether such filings are periodic, supplemental or otherwise. Delivery of the reports, information and documents to the Trustee pursuant to this Section 704(2) shall be solely for the purposes of compliance with this Section 704(2) and with TIA Section 314(a). The Trustee's receipt of such reports, information

and documents shall not constitute notice to it of the content thereof or of any matter determinable from the content thereof (and the Trustee shall not have any duty to ascertain or inquire as to such content or matter), including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder, as to which the Trustee is conclusively entitled to rely upon Officers' Certificates.

ARTICLE EIGHT.

CONSOLIDATION, MERGER AND SALES

Section 801. *Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms.*

The Company shall not, in any transaction or series of related transactions, consolidate with or merge into any Person or sell, assign, transfer, lease or otherwise convey all or substantially all its properties and assets to any Person, unless:

(1) either (A) the Company shall be the continuing Person (in the case of a merger), or (B) the successor Person (if other than the Company) formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or which acquires by sale, assignment, transfer, lease or other conveyance all or substantially all the properties and assets of the Company shall be a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America, any state thereof or the District of Columbia and shall expressly assume, by an indenture (or indentures, if at such time there is more than one Trustee) supplemental hereto, executed by such successor corporation and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of, any premium and interest on, all the Outstanding Securities and the due and punctual performance and observance of every obligation in this Indenture and the Outstanding Securities on the part of the Company to be performed or observed, and which supplemental indenture shall provide for conversion or exchange rights in accordance with the provisions of the Securities of any Series that are convertible or exchangeable into Common Stock or other securities;

(2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction and treating any indebtedness that becomes an obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary as a result of that transaction as having been incurred by the Company or any Subsidiary at the time of the transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time, or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have occurred and be continuing; and

(3) either the Company or the successor Person shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, sale, assignment, transfer, lease or other conveyance and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental indenture comply with this Article Eight and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

For purposes of the foregoing, any sale, assignment, transfer, lease or other conveyance of all or any of the properties and assets of one or more Subsidiaries of the Company (other than to the Company or another Subsidiary), which, if such properties and assets were owned by the

Company, would constitute all or substantially all of the Company's properties and assets, shall be deemed to be the transfer of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company.

Section 802. *Successor Person Substituted for Company.*

Upon any consolidation by the Company with or merger of the Company into any other Person or any sale, assignment, transfer, lease or conveyance of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company to any Person in accordance with Section 801, the successor Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease or other conveyance is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein; and thereafter, except in the case of a lease, the predecessor Person shall be released from all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

ARTICLE NINE.

SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 901. *Supplemental Indentures without Consent of Holders.*

Without the consent of any Holders of Securities, the Company (when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution) and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes:

(1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company, and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company contained herein and in the Securities; or

(2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any Series of Securities (as shall be specified in such supplemental indenture or indentures) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company with respect to all or any Series of Securities issued under this Indenture (as shall be specified in such supplemental indenture or indentures); or

(3) to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities of a Series in uncertificated or global form, provided any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any Series; or

(4) to establish any Series of Securities and the form or terms of Securities of any Series as permitted by Section 201 and Section 301, including, without limitation, any conversion or exchange provisions applicable to Securities that are convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or property, and any deletions from or additions or changes to this Indenture in connection therewith (provided that any such deletions, additions and changes shall not be applicable to any other Series of Securities then Outstanding); or

54

(5) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more Series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 610; or

(6) (a) to cure any ambiguity or to correct or supplement any provision herein that may be defective or that may be inconsistent with any other provision herein or (b) to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture that shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any Series then Outstanding in any material respect; or

(7) to add any additional Events of Default with respect to all or any Series of Securities (as shall be specified in such supplemental indenture); or

(8) to supplement any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the defeasance, covenant defeasance and/or satisfaction and discharge of any Series of Securities pursuant to Article Four, provided that any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of any Holder of a Security of such Series or any other Security in any material respect; or

(9) to secure the Securities; or

(10) to make provisions with respect to conversion or exchange rights of Holders of Securities of any Series; or

(11) to amend, supplement or eliminate any provision contained herein or in any supplemental indenture or in any Securities (which amendment or supplement may apply to one or more Series of Securities or to one or more Securities within any Series as specified in such supplemental indenture or indentures), provided that such amendment, supplement or elimination does not apply to any Outstanding Security issued prior to the date of such supplemental indenture and entitled to the benefits of such provision; or

(12) in the case of any Series of Securities which are convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock or other securities or property, to safeguard or provide for the conversion or exchange rights, as the case may be, of such Securities in the event of any reclassification or change of outstanding shares of Common Stock or any merger, consolidation, statutory share exchange or combination of the Company with or into another Person or any sale, lease, assignment, transfer, disposition or other conveyance of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company to any other Person or other similar transactions, if expressly required by the terms of such Series of Securities established pursuant to Section 301; or

(13) to add to, delete from or revise the conditions, limitations or restrictions on issue, authentication and delivery of Securities of any Series; or

(14) to conform any provision in this Indenture to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act; or

55

(15) to make any change that does not adversely affect the legal rights under this Indenture of any Holder of Securities of any Series issued under this Indenture.

Section 902. Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders.

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of each Series affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company (when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution), and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of the Securities of such Series or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such Series under this Indenture; provided, that no such supplemental indenture, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby, shall

(1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or premium, if any, or any installment of interest, if any, on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the premium, if any, thereon or the rate (or modify the calculation of such rate) of interest thereon, or reduce the amount payable upon redemption thereof at the option of the Company or repayment thereof at the option of the Holder, or reduce the amount of the principal of any Original Issue Discount Security that would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 502 or the amount thereof provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 504, or extend the time of payment of interest on any Security, or change any of the conversion, exchange or redemption provisions of any Security or change the Place of Payment where the principal of, any premium or interest on, any Security is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date), in each case as such Stated Maturity, Redemption Date or date for repayment may, if applicable, be extended in accordance with the terms of such Security, or in the case of any Security that is convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or property, impair the right to institute suit to

enforce the right to convert or exchange such Security in accordance with its terms or modify the ranking or priority of the Securities in a manner adverse to the Holders of the Securities, or

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in Section 513 or Section 1006 of this Indenture, or reduce the requirements of Section 1404 for quorum or voting, or

(3) modify any of the provisions of this Section 902, Section 513 or Section 1006, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby.

A supplemental indenture that changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which shall have been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular

56

Series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such Series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other Series.

Anything in this Indenture to the contrary notwithstanding, if more than one Series of Securities is Outstanding, the Company shall be entitled to enter into a supplemental indenture under this Section 902 with respect to any one or more Series of Outstanding Securities without entering into a supplemental indenture with respect to any other Series of Outstanding Securities.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders of Securities under this Section 902 to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

Section 903. *Execution of Supplemental Indentures.*

As a condition to executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article Nine or the modifications thereby of the trust created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 315(a) through Section 315(d) of the Trust Indenture Act) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture and that such supplemental indenture has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by, and is a valid, binding and enforceable obligation of, the Company, subject to customary exceptions. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Section 904. *Effect of Supplemental Indentures.*

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article Nine, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of a Security theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder.

Section 905. *Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.*

Securities of any Series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article Nine may, and shall if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any Series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such Series.

Section 906. *Conformity with Trust Indenture Act.*

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect.

57

ARTICLE TEN.

COVENANTS

Section 1001. *Payment of Principal, Premium, Interest.*

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of each Series that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of, any premium and interest on the Securities of such Series, whether payable in cash, shares of Common Stock or other securities or property, in accordance with the terms thereof and this Indenture.

Section 1002. *Maintenance of Office or Agency.*

The Company shall maintain in each Place of Payment for any Series of Securities an Office or Agency where Securities of such Series may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities of such Series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, where Securities of such Series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of such Series relating thereto and this Indenture may be served, provided that, if (i) the City of Dallas, Texas, is a Place of Payment for the Securities of any Series, (ii) there shall be another Place of Payment in the United States of America for such Securities in addition to the City of Dallas, Texas, and (iii) all Securities of such Series are originally issued solely in the form of one or more permanent global Securities, then the Company

shall not be required to maintain any such office or agency in the City of Dallas, Texas, unless and until all or any portion of such global Securities shall be exchanged for or otherwise issued as definitive certificated Securities of such Series as contemplated by the last paragraph of this [Section 1002](#). The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in the location, of such Office or Agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required Office or Agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other Offices or Agencies where the Securities of one or more Series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an Office or Agency in each Place of Payment for Securities of any Series for such purposes. The Company shall give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other Office or Agency.

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, the Company hereby designates the City of Dallas, Texas, as a Place of Payment for each Series of Securities, initially appoints the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee in the City of Dallas, Texas, as the Company's Office or Agency in the City of Dallas, Texas, for such purpose and initially appoints the Trustee as the Security Registrar for each Series of Securities and, if the Securities of any Series are convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock or other securities or property, initially

58

appoints the Trustee as conversion or exchange agent, as the case may be, for the Securities of such Series. The Company may subsequently appoint a different Office or Agency in the City of Dallas, Texas or the Borough of Manhattan, the City of New York, and, as provided in [Section 305](#), may remove and replace from time to time the Security Registrar.

As set forth above in this [Section 1002](#), and unless otherwise provided pursuant to [Section 301](#) with respect to any Series of Securities, in the event that the Securities of a Series are originally issued solely in the form of one or more permanent global Securities and if at any time thereafter Securities of such Series are issued in definitive certificated form in exchange for all or any portion of such global Securities (whether pursuant to [Section 305](#) or otherwise pursuant to the terms of such Securities), the Company shall, at all times from and after the date of the first such exchange until such time as no Securities of such Series in definitive certificated form are Outstanding, establish and maintain an Office or Agency in the City of Dallas, Texas (in addition to any other Offices or Agencies the Company is required to maintain in respect of such Securities) where Securities of such Series may be surrendered and where notices and demands in respect of Securities of such Series and this Indenture may be served for the purposes specified in, and as contemplated by, the first paragraph of this [Section 1002](#).

Section 1003. *Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust.*

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any Series of Securities, it shall, on or before each due date of the principal of, any premium or interest on any of the Securities of such Series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum in Dollars sufficient to pay the principal, any premium and interest, as the case may be, so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided, and shall promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any Series of Securities, it shall, on or prior to each due date of the principal of, or any premium or interest on, any Securities of such Series, deposit with any Paying Agent a sum in Dollars sufficient to pay the principal, premium and interest, as the case may be, so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company shall cause each Paying Agent for any Series of Securities other than the Trustee to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent shall:

- (1) hold all sums held by it for the payment of the principal of, any premium or interest on the Securities of such Series in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture;
- (2) give the Trustee notice of any default by the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities of such Series) in the making of any payment of principal, any premium or interest on the Securities of such Series; and

59

- (3) at any time during the continuance of any such default, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such Paying Agent.

To the extent that the terms of any Securities established pursuant to [Section 301](#) provide that any principal of, or premium or interest, if any, on any such Securities is or may be payable in Common Stock or other securities or property, then the provisions of this [Section 1003](#) shall apply, *mutatis mutandis*, to such Common Stock or other securities or property.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same terms as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such sums.

Except as otherwise provided herein or pursuant hereto, any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of, any premium or interest on any Security of any Series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal or such premium or interest shall have become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof,

and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may, not later than 30 days after the Company's request for such repayment, at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in an Authorized Newspaper in each Place of Payment for such Series or to be mailed to Holders of Securities of such Series, or both, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication or mailing nor shall it be earlier than two years after such principal and any premium or interest shall have become due and payable, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

Section 1004. *Corporate Existence.*

Subject to Article Eight, the Company shall do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect (i) the corporate existence of the Company, (ii) the existence (corporate or other) of each Significant Subsidiary of the Company and (iii) the rights (charter and statutory), licenses and franchises of the Company and each of its Significant Subsidiaries; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to preserve the existence (corporate or other) of any of its Significant Subsidiaries or any such right, license or franchise of the Company or any of its Significant Subsidiaries if the Board of Directors of the Company determines that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and its Significant Subsidiaries taken as a whole and that the loss thereof will not be disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

60

Section 1005. *Maintenance of Properties.*

The Company will, and will cause each Significant Subsidiary to, cause all its properties used or useful in the conduct of its business to be maintained and kept in good condition, repair and working order and supplied with all necessary equipment and will cause to be made all necessary repairs, renewals, replacements, betterments and improvements thereof, all as in the judgment of the Company may be necessary so that the business carried on in connection therewith may be properly and advantageously conducted at all times; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the Company or any Significant Subsidiary from discontinuing the operation and maintenance of any of their respective properties if such discontinuance is, in the judgment of the Board of Directors of the Company or of any Significant Subsidiary, as the case may be, desirable in the conduct of its business.

Section 1006. *Waiver of Certain Covenants.*

The Company may omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in Section 1002 to Section 1005, inclusive, with respect to the Securities of any Series and, if expressly provided pursuant to Section 301(13), any additional covenants applicable to the Securities of such Series if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series, by Act of such Holders, either shall waive such compliance in such instance or generally shall have waived compliance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

Section 1007. *Company Statement as to Compliance.*

The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 180 days after the end of each fiscal year, a written statement (which need not be contained in or accompanied by an Officers' Certificate) signed by the principal executive officer, the principal financial officer or the principal accounting officer of the Company, stating whether or not, to the best of his or her knowledge, the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to notice requirements or periods of grace) and if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which he or she may have knowledge.

ARTICLE ELEVEN.

REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES

Section 1101. *Applicability of Article.*

Redemption of Securities of any Series at the option of the Company as permitted or required by the terms of such Securities shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise provided herein or pursuant hereto) this Article.

Section 1102. *Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.*

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by or pursuant

61

to a Board Resolution. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all of the Securities of any Series, the Company shall, at least 60 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date and of the principal amount of Securities of such Series to be redeemed and, in the event that the Company shall determine that the Securities of any Series to be redeemed shall be selected from Securities of such Series having the same issue date, interest rate or interest rate formula, Stated Maturity and other terms (the "Equivalent Terms"), the Company shall notify the Trustee of such Equivalent Terms.

In the case of any redemption of Securities (A) prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture or (B) pursuant to an election of the Company that is subject to a condition specified in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction or condition.

Section 1103. *Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed.*

If less than all of the Securities of any Series are to be redeemed or if less than all of the Securities of any Series with Equivalent Terms are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee from the Outstanding Securities of such Series or from the Outstanding Securities of such Series with Equivalent Terms, as the case may be, not previously called for redemption, unless otherwise required by law by lot or such method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of portions of the principal amount of Securities of such Series; provided, however, that no such partial redemption shall reduce the portion of the principal amount of a Security of such Series not redeemed to less than the minimum denomination for a Security of such Series established herein or pursuant hereto.

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company and the Security Registrar (if other than itself) in writing of the Securities selected for redemption and, in the case of any Securities selected for partial redemption, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Securities redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal of such Securities which has been or is to be redeemed.

Unless otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities of any Series, if any Security selected for partial redemption is converted or exchanged for Common Stock or other securities or property in part before termination of the conversion or exchange right with respect to the portion of the Security so selected, the converted or exchanged portion of such Security shall be deemed (so far as may be) to be the portion selected for redemption. Securities which have been converted or exchanged during a selection of Securities to be redeemed shall be treated by the Trustee as Outstanding for the purpose of such selection.

Section 1104. *Notice of Redemption.*

Notice of redemption shall be given in the manner provided in Section 106, not less than

62

30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, unless a shorter period is specified in the Securities to be redeemed, to the Holders of Securities to be redeemed. Failure to give notice by mailing in the manner herein provided to the Holder of any Securities designated for redemption as a whole or in part, or any defect in the notice to any such Holder, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities or portions thereof.

Any notice that is mailed to the Holder of any Securities in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not such Holder receives the notice.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date,
- (2) the Redemption Price,
- (3) if less than all Outstanding Securities of any Series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the principal amount) of the particular Security or Securities to be redeemed,
- (4) that, in case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, on and after the Redemption Date, upon surrender of such Security, the Holder of such Security will receive, without charge, a new Security or Securities of authorized denominations for the principal amount thereof remaining unredeemed,
- (5) that, on the Redemption Date, the Redemption Price shall become due and payable upon each such Security or portion thereof to be redeemed, together (if applicable) with accrued and unpaid interest, if any, thereon (subject, if applicable, to the provisos to the first paragraph of Section 1106), and, if applicable, that interest thereon shall cease to accrue on and after said date,
- (6) the place or places where such Securities are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price and any accrued interest pertaining thereto,
- (7) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case,
- (8) in the case of Securities of any Series that are convertible or exchangeable into Common Stock or other securities or property, the then current conversion or exchange price or rate, the date or dates on which the right to convert or exchange the principal of the Securities of such Series to be redeemed will commence or terminate, as applicable, and the place or places where and the Persons to whom such Securities may be surrendered for conversion or exchange,
- (9) the CUSIP number reference numbers of such Securities, if any (or any other numbers used by a Depository to identify such Securities), and
- (10) if the Redemption Price or any portion thereof shall be payable, at the option of the Company or any Holders, in cash or in Common Stock or other securities or property (or a combination thereof), a statement as to whether the Company has elected to pay the Redemption

63

Price in cash or Common Stock or other securities or property or a combination thereof and, if applicable, the portion of the Redemption Price that is to be paid in cash, Common Stock or other securities or property.

A notice of redemption published as contemplated by Section 106 need not identify particular Securities to be redeemed.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request delivered at least 10 days before the date such notice is to be given (unless a shorter period shall be acceptable to the Trustee), by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company.

Section 1105. *Deposit of Redemption Price.*

On or prior to noon (local time in the City of Dallas, Texas) on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit, with respect to the Securities of any Series called for redemption pursuant to Section 1104, with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 1003) an amount of money in Dollars sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and (except if the Redemption Date shall be an Interest Payment Date, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for or in the Securities of such Series) any accrued interest on, all such Securities or portions thereof which are to be redeemed on that date, except that, if the Securities of such Series are convertible or exchangeable into Common Stock or other securities or property, no such deposit shall be required with respect to any such Securities (or portions thereof) which have been converted or exchanged prior to such Redemption Date.

Section 1106. *Securities Payable on Redemption Date.*

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed (except, in the case of Securities which are convertible or exchangeable into Common Stock or other securities or property, any such Securities which shall have been so converted or exchanged prior to the applicable Redemption Date) shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified, together with (unless otherwise provided with respect to the Securities of such Series pursuant to Section 301) accrued and unpaid interest, if any, thereon and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any) such Securities shall cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with, unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, any accrued and unpaid interest thereon to but excluding the Redemption Date; provided, however, that, except as otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities of such Series, installments of interest on Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the Regular Record Dates therefor according to their terms and the provisions of Section 307.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal and any premium, until paid, shall bear interest from the Redemption

Date at the rate prescribed therefor in the Security or, if no rate is prescribed therefor in the Security, at the rate of interest, if any, borne by such Security.

Section 1107. *Securities Redeemed in Part.*

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at any Office or Agency for such Security (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing) and the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same Series, containing identical terms and provisions, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered. If a Security in global form is so surrendered, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Depository for such Security in global form as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto to the Trustee, without service charge, a new Security in global form in a denomination equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security in global form so surrendered.

ARTICLE TWELVE.

SINKING FUNDS

Section 1201. *Applicability of Article.*

The provisions of this Article Twelve shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a Series that by its terms provides for such a sinking fund, except as otherwise permitted or required in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Security of such Series issued pursuant to this Indenture.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any Series is herein referred to as a "mandatory sinking fund payment," and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of such Series is herein referred to as an "optional sinking fund payment." If provided for by the terms of Securities of any Series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 1202. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any Series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such Series and this Indenture.

Section 1202. *Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.*

The Company may, in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of any Series to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities (1) deliver Outstanding Securities of such Series (other than any of such Securities previously called for redemption or any of such Securities in respect of which cash shall have been released to the Company) and (2) apply as a credit Securities of such Series that have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Series of Securities or

through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the Redemption Price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly. If as a result of the delivery or

credit of Securities of any Series in lieu of cash payments pursuant to this Section 1202, the principal amount of Securities of such Series to be redeemed in order to exhaust the aforesaid cash payment shall be less than \$100,000, the Trustee need not call Securities of such Series for redemption, except upon Company Request, and such cash payment shall be held by the Trustee or a Paying Agent and applied to the next succeeding sinking fund payment, provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent shall at the request of the Company from time to time pay over and deliver to the Company any cash payment so being held by the Trustee or such Paying Agent upon delivery by the Company to the Trustee of Securities of that Series purchased by the Company having an unpaid principal amount equal to the cash payment requested to be released to the Company.

Section 1203. *Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.*

Not less than 75 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any Series of Securities, the Company shall deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment for that Series pursuant to the terms of that Series, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting of Securities of that Series pursuant to Section 1202, and the optional amount, if any, to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so credited and not theretofore delivered. If such Officers' Certificate shall specify an optional amount to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, the Company shall thereupon be obligated to pay the amount therein specified. Not less than 60 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 1103 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 1104. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Section 1106 and Section 1107.

ARTICLE THIRTEEN.

[RESERVED]

ARTICLE FOURTEEN.

MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

Section 1401. *Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called.*

A meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series may be called at any time and from time to time pursuant to this Article to make, give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act provided by this Indenture to be made, given or

66

taken by Holders of Securities of such Series.

Section 1402. *Call, Notice and Place of Meetings.*

(1) The Trustee may at any time call a meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series for any purpose specified in Section 1401, to be held at such time and at such place in the County of Dallas, the City of Dallas, Texas. Notice of every meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series, setting forth the time and the place of such meeting and in general terms the action proposed to be taken at such meeting, shall be given, in the manner provided in Section 106, not less than 21 nor more than 180 days prior to the date fixed for the meeting.

(2) In case at any time the Company (by or pursuant to a Board Resolution) or the Holders of at least 10% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series shall have requested the Trustee to call a meeting of the Holders of Securities of such Series for any purpose specified in Section 1401, by written request setting forth in reasonable detail the action proposed to be taken at the meeting, and the Trustee shall not have mailed notice of or made the first publication of the notice of such meeting within 21 days after receipt of such request (whichever shall be required pursuant to Section 106) or shall not thereafter proceed to cause the meeting to be held as provided herein, then the Company or the Holders of Securities of such Series in the amount above specified, as the case may be, may determine the time and the place in the County of Dallas, the City of Dallas, Texas, for such meeting and may call such meeting for such purposes by giving notice thereof as provided in clause (1) of this Section.

Section 1403. *Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings.*

To be entitled to vote at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series, a Person shall be (1) a Holder of one or more Outstanding Securities of such Series, or (2) a Person appointed by an instrument in writing as proxy for a Holder or Holders of one or more Outstanding Securities of such Series by such Holder or Holders. The only Persons who shall be entitled to be present or to speak at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series shall be the Persons entitled to vote at such meeting and their counsel, any representatives of the Trustee and its counsel and any representatives of the Company and its counsel.

Section 1404. *Quorum; Action.*

The Persons entitled to vote a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a Series shall constitute a quorum for a meeting or duly reconvened meeting of Holders of Securities of such Series; provided, however, that if any action is to be taken at such meeting with respect to a consent or waiver which this Indenture expressly provides may be given by the Holders of at least 66-2/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a Series, the Persons entitled to vote 66-2/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series shall constitute a quorum. In the absence of a quorum within 30 minutes after the time appointed for any such meeting, the meeting shall, if convened at the request of Holders of Securities of such Series, be dissolved. In any other case the meeting may be adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such meeting. In the absence of a quorum at any such adjourned meeting, such adjourned meeting may be further adjourned for a period of not less

67

than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such adjourned meeting. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall be given as provided in Section 1402(1), except that such notice need be given only once not less than five days prior to the date on which the meeting is scheduled to be reconvened. Notice of the reconvening of an adjourned meeting shall state expressly the percentage, as provided above, of the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series which shall constitute a quorum.

Except as limited by the proviso to Section 902, any resolution presented to a meeting or adjourned meeting duly reconvened at which a quorum is present as aforesaid may be adopted only by the affirmative vote of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series; provided, however, that, except as limited by the proviso to Section 902, any resolution with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act which this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of at least 66-2/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a Series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly convened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid only by the affirmative vote of the Holders of at least 66-2/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that Series; and provided, further, that, except as limited by the proviso to Section 902, any resolution with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act that this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage, which is less than a majority, in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a Series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly reconvened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid by the affirmative vote of the Holders of such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series.

Any resolution passed or decision taken at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series duly held in accordance with this Section shall be binding on all the Holders of Securities of such Series, whether or not such Holders were present or represented at the meeting.

Section 1405. *Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings.*

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Indenture, the Trustee may make such reasonable regulations as it may deem advisable for any meeting of Holders of Securities of such Series in regard to proof of the holding of Securities of such Series and of the appointment of proxies and in regard to the appointment and duties of inspectors of votes, the submission and examination of proxies, certificates and other evidence of the right to vote, and such other matters concerning the conduct of the meeting as it shall deem appropriate. Except as otherwise permitted or required by any such regulations, the holding of Securities shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 104 and the appointment of any proxy shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 104. Such regulations may provide that written instruments appointing proxies, regular on their face, may be presumed valid and genuine without the proof specified in Section 104 or other proof.

(2) The Trustee shall, by an instrument in writing, appoint a temporary chairman of the meeting, unless the meeting shall have been called by the Company or by Holders of Securities as provided in Section 1402(2), in which case the Company or the Holders of

68

Securities of the Series calling the meeting, as the case may be, shall in like manner appoint a temporary chairman. A permanent chairman and a permanent secretary of the meeting shall be elected by vote of the Persons entitled to vote a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series represented at the meeting.

(3) At any meeting, each Holder of a Security of such Series or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$1,000 principal amount of Securities of such Series held or represented by him; provided, however, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security challenged as not Outstanding and ruled by the chairman of the meeting to be not Outstanding. If the Securities of such Series are issuable in minimum denominations of less than \$1,000, then a Holder of such a Security in a principal amount of less than \$1,000 shall be entitled to a fraction of one vote that is equal to the fraction that the principal amount of such Security bears to \$1,000. The chairman of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a Holder of a Security of such Series or proxy.

(4) Any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series duly called pursuant to Section 1402 at which a quorum is present may be adjourned from time to time by Persons entitled to vote a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series represented at the meeting; and the meeting may be held as so adjourned without further notice.

Section 1406. *Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings.*

The vote upon any resolution submitted to any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series shall be by written ballots on which shall be subscribed the signatures of the Holders of Securities of such Series or of their representatives by proxy and the principal amounts and serial numbers of the Outstanding Securities of such Series held or represented by them. The permanent chairman of the meeting shall appoint two inspectors of votes who shall count all votes cast at the meeting for or against any resolution and who shall make and file with the secretary of the meeting their verified written reports in triplicate of all votes cast at the meeting. A record, at least in triplicate, of the proceedings of each meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series shall be prepared by the secretary of the meeting and there shall be attached to said record the original reports of the inspectors of votes on any vote by ballot taken thereat and affidavits by one or more persons having knowledge of the facts setting forth a copy of the notice of the meeting and showing that said notice was given as provided in Section 1402 and, if applicable, Section 1404. Each copy shall be signed and verified by the affidavits of the permanent chairman and secretary of the meeting and one such copy shall be delivered to the Company, and another to the Trustee to be preserved by the Trustee, the latter to have attached thereto the ballots voted at the meeting. Any record so signed and verified shall be conclusive evidence of the matters therein stated.

(Signature page follows)

69

This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed all as of the day and year first above written.

VERITEX HOLDINGS, INC.

By:
Name:
Title:

**U.S. BANK NATIONAL
ASSOCIATION, as Trustee**

By:
Name:
Title:

VERITEX HOLDINGS, INC.,
 Issuer
 to
 U.S. Bank National Association,
 Trustee
 SUBORDINATED DEBT INDENTURE
 Dated as of [·]
 Subordinated Debt Securities

Reconciliation and tie between
 Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (the “Trust Indenture Act”) and Indenture

Trust Indenture Act Section	Indenture Section
§310(a)(1)	608
(a)(2)	608
(b)	609
§312(a)	701
(b)	702
(c)	702
§313(a)	703
(b)(2)	703
(c)	703
(d)	703
§314(a)	704
(c)(1)	102
(c)(2)	102
(e)	102
§315(b)	603
(e)	515
§316(a) (last sentence)	101
(a)(1)(A)	502, 512
(a)(1)(B)	513
(b)	508
§317(a)(1)	503
(a)(2)	504
(b)	1003
§318(a)	108

Note: This reconciliation and tie shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be part of the Indenture.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ARTICLE ONE.	DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION	1
Section 101.	Definitions	1
Section 102.	Compliance Certificates and Opinions	10
Section 103.	Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee	11
Section 104.	Acts of Holders	11
Section 105.	Notices, etc. to Trustee and Company	12
Section 106.	Notice to Holders of Securities; Waiver	13
Section 107.	Language of Notices	13
Section 108.	Conflict with Trust Indenture Act	13
Section 109.	Effect of Headings and Table of Contents	14
Section 110.	Successors and Assigns	14
Section 111.	Separability Clause	14
Section 112.	Benefits of Indenture	14
Section 113.	Governing Law	14
Section 114.	Legal Holidays	14
Section 115.	Counterparts; Electronic Transmission	14

Section 116.	Immunity of Shareholders, Directors, Officers and Agents of the Company	15
Section 117.	Waiver of Jury Trial	15
Section 118.	Force Majeure	15
ARTICLE TWO.	SECURITIES FORMS	15
Section 201.	Forms Generally	15
Section 202.	Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication	16
Section 203.	Securities in Global Form	16
ARTICLE THREE.	THE SECURITIES	17
Section 301.	Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series	17
Section 302.	Currency; Denominations	22
Section 303.	Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating	22
Section 304.	Temporary Securities	23
Section 305.	Registration, Transfer and Exchange	24
Section 306.	Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities	27
Section 307.	Payment of Interest; Rights to Interest Preserved	27
Section 308.	Persons Deemed Owners	29
Section 309.	Cancellation	29
Section 310.	Computation of Interest	30
ARTICLE FOUR.	SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE	30
Section 401.	Satisfaction and Discharge	30
Section 402.	Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance	31
Section 403.	Application of Trust Money	35
Section 404.	Reinstatement	35
Section 405.	Effect on Subordination Provisions	35
ARTICLE FIVE.	REMEDIES	36
Section 501.	Events of Default	36
Section 502.	Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment	37
Section 503.	Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	39
<hr/>		
Section 504.	Trustee May File Proofs of Claim	39
Section 505.	Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities	40
Section 506.	Application of Money Collected	40
Section 507.	Limitation on Suits	41
Section 508.	Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest	41
Section 509.	Restoration of Rights and Remedies	42
Section 510.	Rights and Remedies Cumulative	42
Section 511.	Delay or Omission Not Waiver	42
Section 512.	Control by Holders	42
Section 513.	Waiver of Past Defaults	43
Section 514.	Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws	43
Section 515.	Undertaking for Costs	43
ARTICLE SIX.	THE TRUSTEE	44
Section 601.	Duties of Trustee	44
Section 602.	Certain Rights of Trustee	44
Section 603.	Notice of Defaults	46
Section 604.	Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	46
Section 605.	May Hold Securities	47
Section 606.	Money Held in Trust	47
Section 607.	Compensation and Reimbursement	47
Section 608.	Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	48
Section 609.	Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	48
Section 610.	Acceptance of Appointment by Successor	50
Section 611.	Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	51
Section 612.	Appointment of Authenticating Agent	51
ARTICLE SEVEN.	HOLDERS LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY	53
Section 701.	Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders	53
Section 702.	Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders	53
Section 703.	Reports by Trustee	54
Section 704.	Reports by Company	54
ARTICLE EIGHT.	CONSOLIDATION, MERGER AND SALES	55

Section 801.	Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms	55
Section 802.	Successor Person Substituted for Company	56
ARTICLE NINE. SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES		56
Section 901.	Supplemental Indentures without Consent of Holders	56
Section 902.	Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders	58
Section 903.	Execution of Supplemental Indentures	59
Section 904.	Effect of Supplemental Indentures	59
Section 905.	Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures	60
Section 906.	Effect on Senior Indebtedness	60
Section 907.	Conformity with Trust Indenture Act	60
ARTICLE TEN. COVENANTS		60
Section 1001.	Payment of Principal, Premium, Interest	60
Section 1002.	Maintenance of Office or Agency	60
Section 1003.	Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust	61
<hr/>		
Section 1004.	Corporate Existence	63
Section 1005.	Maintenance of Properties	63
Section 1006.	Waiver of Certain Covenants	63
Section 1007.	Company Statement as to Compliance	63
ARTICLE ELEVEN. REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES		64
Section 1101.	Applicability of Article	64
Section 1102.	Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee	64
Section 1103.	Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed	64
Section 1104.	Notice of Redemption	65
Section 1105.	Deposit of Redemption Price	66
Section 1106.	Securities Payable on Redemption Date	67
Section 1107.	Securities Redeemed in Part	67
ARTICLE TWELVE. SINKING FUNDS		67
Section 1201.	Applicability of Article	67
Section 1202.	Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	68
Section 1203.	Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	68
ARTICLE THIRTEEN. [RESERVED]		69
ARTICLE FOURTEEN. MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES		69
Section 1401.	Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called	69
Section 1402.	Call, Notice and Place of Meetings	69
Section 1403.	Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings	69
Section 1404.	Quorum; Action	70
Section 1405.	Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings	71
Section 1406.	Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings	71
ARTICLE FIFTEEN. SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES		72
Section 1501.	Agreement to Subordinate	72

SUBORDINATED DEBT INDENTURE, dated as of [-] (the “Indenture”), between Veritex Holdings, Inc., a corporation duly organized and existing under the laws of the State of Texas (hereinafter called the “Company”), having its principal executive office located at 8214 Westchester Drive, Suite 400, Dallas, Texas 75225, and U.S. Bank National Association, a national banking association duly organized and existing under the laws of the United States (hereinafter called the “Trustee”).

RECITALS

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its subordinated unsecured debt securities (hereinafter called the “Securities”), unlimited as to principal amount, to bear such rates of interest, to mature at such time or times, to be issued in one or more Series, to have such relative rankings in priority of payment, and to have such other provisions as shall be fixed as hereinafter provided.

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture. All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

This Indenture is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, and the rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission promulgated thereunder that are required to be part of this Indenture and, to the extent applicable, shall be governed by such provisions.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders (as herein defined) thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or the Securities of any Series as follows:

ARTICLE ONE.

DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

Section 101. *Definitions.*

Except as otherwise expressly provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or unless the context otherwise requires, for all purposes of this Indenture:

- (1) the terms defined in this Article have the meanings assigned to them in this Article, and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all other terms used herein that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein;
- (3) all accounting terms not otherwise defined herein have the meanings assigned to them in accordance with GAAP;

1

- (4) the words “herein,” “hereof,” “hereto” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision;
- (5) the word “or” is always used inclusively (for example, the phrase “A or B” means “A or B or both,” not “either A or B but not both”);
- (6) provisions apply to successive events and transactions;
- (7) the term “merger” includes a statutory share exchange and the terms “merge” and “merged” have correlative meanings;
- (8) the masculine gender includes the feminine and the neuter; and
- (9) references to agreements and other instruments include subsequent amendments and supplements thereto.

Certain terms used principally in certain Articles hereof are defined in those Articles.

“Act,” when used with respect to any Holders, has the meaning specified in Section 104.

“Affiliate” means, with respect to any specified Person, any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control,” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“Authenticating Agent” means any Person authorized by the Trustee pursuant to Section 612 to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of one or more Series.

“Authorized Newspaper” means a newspaper, in an official language of the place of publication or in the English language, customarily published on each day that is a Business Day in the place of publication, whether or not published on days that are not Business Days in the place of publication, and of general circulation in each place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of each such place. Where successive publications are required to be made in Authorized Newspapers, the successive publications may be made in the same or in different newspapers in the same place meeting the foregoing requirements and in each case on any day that is a Business Day in the place of publication.

“Authorized Officer” means each of the Chairman of the Board, the Chief Executive Officer, the President, and the Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of the Company.

“Board of Directors” means the board of directors of the Company or any committee of that board duly authorized to act generally or in any particular respect for the Company hereunder. The term “board of directors” means the board of directors of the Company and does not include committees of the board of directors.

2

“Board Resolution” means one or more resolutions, certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, delivered to the Trustee.

“Business Day” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to the Securities of any Series pursuant to Section 301, any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which banking institutions in the City of Dallas, Texas, or The City of New York, New York, are authorized or obligated by law,

regulation or executive order to close; provided that such term shall mean, when used with respect to any payment of principal of, or premium or interest, if any, on, the Securities of any Series to be made at any Place of Payment for such Securities, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 with respect to such Securities, any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which banking institutions in such Place of Payment are authorized or obligated by law, regulation or executive order to close.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, or, if at any time after the execution of this Indenture such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“Common Stock” includes the Company common stock, par value \$0.01 per share, and any other authorized stock of any class of the Company that has no preference in respect of dividends or of amounts payable in the event of any voluntary or involuntary liquidation, termination or winding up of the Company and that is not subject to redemption by the Company.

“Company” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Person and any other obligor upon the Securities.

“Company Request” and “Company Order” mean, respectively, a written request or order, as the case may be, signed in the name of the Company by an Authorized Officer and by the Secretary of the Company, and delivered to the Trustee.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the principal office of the Trustee at which at any time its corporate trust business shall be administered, which office at the date hereof is located at Dallas, Texas, or such other address as the Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Holders and the Company, or the principal corporate trust office of any successor Trustee (or such other address as such successor Trustee may designate from time to time by notice to the Holders and the Company).

“corporation” includes corporations, partnerships, associations, limited liability companies and other companies, statutory trusts and business trusts.

“Currency,” with respect to any payment, deposit or other transfer in respect of the principal of or any premium or interest on any Security, means Dollars.

“CUSIP number” means the alphanumeric designation assigned to a Security by

3

Standard & Poor’s, CUSIP Service Bureau.

“Dallas, Texas Banking Day” means any day except a Saturday, Sunday or a legal holiday in the City of Dallas, Texas, or a day on which banking institutions in the City of Dallas, Texas, are authorized or obligated by law, regulation or executive order to be closed.

“Defaulted Interest” has the meaning specified in Section 307.

“Depository” means, with respect to any Security issuable or issued in the form of one or more global Securities, the Person designated as depository by the Company in or pursuant to this Indenture, and, unless otherwise provided with respect to any Security, any successor to such Person. If at any time there is more than one such Person, “Depository” shall mean, with respect to any Securities, the depository that has been appointed with respect to such Securities.

“Dollars” or “\$” means a dollar or other equivalent unit of legal tender for payment of public or private debts in the United States of America.

“Event of Default” has the meaning specified in Section 501.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any successor statute thereto, together with all rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, in each case as amended from time to time.

“GAAP” and “generally accepted accounting principles” mean, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Series of Securities pursuant to Section 301, such accounting principles as are generally accepted in the United States of America as of the date or time of any computation required hereunder.

“Government Obligations” means securities which are (i) direct obligations of the United States of America in each case where the payment or payments thereunder are supported by the full faith and credit of the United States of America, or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America or such other government or governments, in each case where the timely payment or payments thereunder are unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America, and which, in the case of (i) or (ii), are denominated in, and the principal of and interest on such securities are payable in, Dollars and are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer or issuers thereof.

“Holder,” in the case of any Security, means the Person in whose name such Security is registered in the Security Register.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and, with respect to any Security, by the terms and provisions of such Security established pursuant to Section 301 (as such terms and provisions may be amended pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof), provided, however, that, if at any time more than one Person is acting as Trustee under this instrument, “Indenture” shall mean, with respect to any one or more Series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee, this

4

instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and shall include the terms of those particular Series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee established pursuant to Section 301, exclusive, however, of any provisions or terms which relate solely to other Series of Securities for which such Person is not Trustee, regardless of when such terms or provisions were adopted.

“Indexed Security” means a Security the terms of which provide that the principal amount thereof payable at Stated Maturity may be more or less than the principal face amount thereof at original issuance.

“interest,” with respect to any Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity.

“Interest Payment Date,” with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“Maturity,” with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security, whether at the Stated Maturity or by an acceleration of the maturity of such Security in accordance with the terms of such Security, upon redemption at the option of the Company, upon repurchase or repayment at the option of the Holder or otherwise, and includes a Redemption Date for such Security and a date fixed for the repurchase or repayment of such Security at the option of the Holder.

“Office” or “Agency,” with respect to any Securities, means an office or agency of the Company maintained or designated in a Place of Payment for such Securities pursuant to Section 1002 or any other office or agency of the Company maintained or designated for such Securities pursuant to Section 1002 or, to the extent designated or required by Section 1002 in lieu of such office or agency, the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee.

“Officer” means, with respect to any Person, the chairman of the board, vice chairman of the board, the chief executive officer, the president, the chief operating officer, the chief financial officer, the treasurer, any assistant treasurer, the controller, the secretary or any Vice President of such Person.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed on behalf of the Company by two Officers of the Company, one of whom must be an Authorized Officer (which, in the case of a certificate provided by the Company to the Trustee pursuant to Section 704(1)(b) as required by Section 314(a)(4) of the Trust Indenture Act, shall be the principal executive officer or the principal financial officer of the Company), that complies with the requirements of Section 314(e) of the Trust Indenture Act and is delivered to the Trustee.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who is reasonably acceptable to the Trustee, that, if required by the Trust Indenture Act, complies with the requirements of Section 314(e) of the Trust Indenture Act.

“Original Issue Discount Security” means a Security issued pursuant to this Indenture

5

that provides for an amount less than the principal face amount thereof to be due and payable upon declaration of acceleration pursuant to Section 502.

“Outstanding,” when used with respect to any Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all such Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (a) any such Security theretofore cancelled by the Trustee or the Security Registrar or delivered to the Trustee or the Security Registrar for cancellation;
- (b) any such Security for whose payment at the Maturity thereof money in the necessary amount (or, to the extent that such Security is payable at such Maturity in shares of Common Stock or other securities or property, Common Stock or such other securities or property in the necessary amount, together with, if applicable, cash in lieu of fractional shares or securities) has been theretofore deposited pursuant hereto (other than pursuant to Section 402) with the Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities, provided that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustee has been made;
- (c) any such Security with respect to which the Company has effected defeasance or covenant defeasance pursuant to Section 402, except to the extent provided in Section 402;
- (d) any such Security that has been paid pursuant to Section 306 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, unless there shall have been presented to the Trustee proof satisfactory to the Trustee that such Security is held by a bona fide purchaser in whose hands such Security is a valid obligation of the Company; and
- (e) any such Security converted or exchanged as contemplated by this Indenture into Common Stock or other securities or property, if the terms of such Security provide for such conversion or exchange pursuant to Section 301;

provided, however, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of Outstanding Securities have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder or are present at a meeting of Holders of Securities for quorum purposes, (i) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that may be counted in making such determination and that shall be deemed to be Outstanding for such purposes shall be equal to the amount of the principal thereof that pursuant to the terms of such Original Issue Discount Security would be declared (or shall have been declared to be) due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration thereof pursuant to Section 502 at the time of such determination, and (ii) the principal amount of any Indexed Security that may be counted in making such determination and that shall be deemed Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the principal face amount of such Indexed Security at original issuance, unless otherwise provided in

6

or pursuant to this Indenture, and (iii) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in making any such determination or relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, only Securities that a Responsible Officer of the Trustee actually knows to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned that shall have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustee (A) the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and (B) that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or an Affiliate (other than a Trust) of the Company or such other obligor.

"Paying Agent" means any Person authorized by the Company, including the Company, to pay the principal of, or any premium or interest on, any Security on behalf of the Company.

"Person" and "person" mean any individual, corporation, partnership, association, limited liability company, other company, statutory trust, business trust, joint venture, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

"Place of Payment," with respect to any Security, means the place or places where the principal of, or any premium or interest on, such Security are payable as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security.

"Predecessor Security," of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same indebtedness as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 306 in exchange for or in lieu of a lost, destroyed, mutilated or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same indebtedness as the lost, destroyed, mutilated or stolen Security.

"Redemption Date," with respect to any Security or portion thereof to be redeemed, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security.

"Redemption Price," with respect to any Security or portion thereof to be redeemed, means the price at which it is to be redeemed as determined by or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security.

"Regular Record Date" for the interest payable on any Security on any Interest Payment Date therefor means the date, if any, specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security as the record date for the payment of such interest.

"Responsible Officer" means, when used with respect to the Trustee, any officer within the corporate trust department of the Trustee, including any vice president, assistant vice president, assistant secretary, assistant treasurer, trust officer or any other officer of the Trustee who customarily performs functions similar to those performed by the Persons who at the time shall be such officers, respectively, or to whom any corporate trust matter is referred because of such Person's knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject and who shall have direct responsibility for the administration of this Indenture.

7

"Securities Act" means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or any successor statute thereto, together with all rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, in each case as amended from time to time.

"Security" or "Securities" means any note or notes, bond or bonds, debenture or debentures, or any other evidence or evidences of indebtedness, as the case may be, authenticated and delivered under this Indenture; provided, however, that, if at any time there is more than one Person acting as Trustee under this Indenture, "Securities," with respect to any such Person, shall mean Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, exclusive, however, of Securities of any Series as to which such Person is not Trustee.

"Security Register" and "Security Registrar" have the respective meanings specified in Section 305.

"Senior Indebtedness" means the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest, including interest accruing after the commencement of any bankruptcy proceeding relating to the Company, on, or substantially similar payments the Company makes in respect of the following categories of debt, whether that debt was outstanding on the date of execution of this Indenture or thereafter incurred, created or assumed:

- (1) other indebtedness of the Company evidenced by notes, debentures, or bonds or other securities issued under the provisions of any indenture, fiscal agency agreement, debenture or note purchase agreement or other agreement, including any senior debt securities that may be offered;
- (2) indebtedness of the Company for money borrowed or represented by purchase-money obligations, as defined below;
- (3) the Company's obligations as lessee under leases of property whether made as part of a sale and leaseback transaction to which it is a party or otherwise;
- (4) indebtedness, obligations and liabilities of others in respect of which the Company is liable contingently or otherwise to pay or advance money or property or as guarantor, endorser or otherwise or which it has agreed to purchase or otherwise acquire and indebtedness of partnerships and joint ventures that is included in the Company's consolidated financial statements;
- (5) reimbursement and other obligations relating to letters of credit, bankers' acceptances and similar obligations;
- (6) obligations under various hedging arrangements and agreements, including interest rate and currency hedging agreements and swap and non-swap forward agreements;
- (7) all of the Company's obligations issued or assumed as the deferred purchase price of property or services, but excluding trade accounts payable and accrued liabilities arising in the ordinary course of business; and

8

(8) deferrals, renewals or extensions of any of the indebtedness or obligations described in clauses (1) through (8) above.

However, clauses (1) through (9) above exclude:

- (x) any indebtedness, obligation or liability referred to in clauses (1) through (9) above as to which, in the instrument creating or evidencing that indebtedness, obligation or liability, it is expressly provided that the indebtedness, obligation or liability is not senior in right of payment, is junior in right of payment to, or ranks equally in right of payment with, other specified types of indebtedness, obligations and liabilities of the Company, which other specified types of indebtedness, obligations and liabilities of the Company include the Securities;
- (y) any indebtedness, obligation or liability that is subordinated to indebtedness, obligations or liabilities of the Company to substantially the same extent as or to a greater extent than the Securities are subordinated; and
- (z) the Securities and the Company's outstanding junior subordinated debentures and, unless expressly provided in the terms thereof, any indebtedness of the Company to its Subsidiaries.

As used above, the term "purchase money obligations" means indebtedness, obligations evidenced by a note, debenture, bond or other instrument, whether or not secured by a lien or other security interest, issued to evidence the obligation to pay or a guarantee of the payment of, and any deferred obligation for the payment of, the purchase price of property but excluding indebtedness or obligations for which recourse is limited to the property purchased, issued or assumed as all or a part of the consideration for the acquisition of property or services, whether by purchase, merger, consolidation or otherwise, but does not include any trade accounts payable.

"Series" means a series of Securities designated or established pursuant to Section 301, all of which Securities in such Series shall have like terms and conditions (other than the principal amount thereof).

"Significant Subsidiary" means any Subsidiary of the Company that is a "significant subsidiary" as defined in Rule 1-02 of Regulation S-X promulgated by the Commission (as such rule is in effect on the date of this Indenture).

"Special Record Date" for the payment of any Defaulted Interest on any Security means a date fixed pursuant to Section 307.

"Stated Maturity," with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date established by or pursuant to this Indenture or such Security as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable.

9

"Subordination Provisions," when used with respect to the Securities of any Series, shall have the meaning established pursuant to Section 301(20) with respect to the Securities of such Series.

"Subsidiary" means a corporation, a partnership, business or statutory trust or a limited liability company, a majority of the outstanding voting equity securities or a majority of the voting membership or partnership interests, as the case may be, of which is owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by the Company or by one or more other Subsidiaries of the Company. For the purposes of this definition, "voting equity securities" means securities having voting power for the election of directors, managers, managing partners or trustees, as the case may be, whether at all times or only so long as no senior class of stock has voting power by reason of any contingency.

"Trust Indenture Act" means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, and any reference herein to the Trust Indenture Act or a particular provision thereof shall mean such Act or provision, as the case may be, as amended or replaced from time to time or as supplemented from time to time by rules or regulations adopted by the Commission under or in furtherance of the purposes of such Act or provision, as the case may be.

"Trustee" means the Person named as the "Trustee" in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such with respect to one or more Series of Securities pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter "Trustee" shall mean each Person who is then a Trustee hereunder; provided, however, that if at any time there is more than one such Person, "Trustee" shall mean each such Person and as used with respect to the Securities of any Series shall mean the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series.

"United States," means the United States of America (including the states thereof and the District of Columbia), its territories, its possessions and other areas subject to its jurisdiction; and the term "United States of America" means the United States of America.

"United States Alien," except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Security, means any Person who, for United States federal income tax purposes, is a foreign corporation, a nonresident alien individual, a nonresident alien fiduciary of a foreign estate or trust, or a foreign partnership one or more of the members of which is, for United States federal income tax purposes, a foreign corporation, a nonresident alien individual or a nonresident alien fiduciary of a foreign estate or trust.

"Vice President," when used with respect to the Company or the Trustee, means any vice president, whether or not designated by a number or a word or words added before or after the title "Vice President."

Section 102. *Compliance Certificates and Opinions.*

Except as otherwise expressly provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have

been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that, in the opinion of such counsel, all such conditions precedent, if any, have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or request as to which the furnishing of such documents or any of them is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or request, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Section 103. *Form of Documents Delivered to Trustee.*

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons as to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon an Opinion of Counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the opinion with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based is erroneous. Any such Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company, a governmental official or officers or any other Person or Persons, stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate, opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture or any Security, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

Section 104. *Acts of Holders.*

(1) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by or pursuant to this Indenture to be made, given or taken by Holders may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Holders in person or by an agent duly appointed in writing or a written record of voting at a meeting of the Holders. Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments or record or both are delivered to the Trustee and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. Such instrument or instruments and any such record (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the "Act" of the Holders signing such instrument or instruments or so voting at any such meeting. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent, or of the holding by any Person of a Security, shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and (subject to Section 315 of the Trust Indenture Act) conclusive in favor of the Trustee and the Company and any agent of the Trustee or the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section. The record of any meeting of Holders of Securities shall be proved in the manner provided in [Section 1406](#).

11

Without limiting the generality of this [Section 104](#), unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, a Holder, including a Depositary that is a Holder of a global Security, may make, give or take, by a proxy or proxies, duly appointed in writing, any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities to be made, given or taken by Holders, and a Depositary that is a Holder of a global Security may provide its proxy or proxies to the beneficial owners of interests in any such global Security through such Depositary's standing instructions and customary practices.

(2) The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved in any reasonable manner that the Trustee deems sufficient and in accordance with such reasonable rules as the Trustee may determine; and the Trustee may in any instance require further proof with respect to any of the matters referred to in this Section.

(3) The ownership, principal amount and serial numbers of Securities held by any Person, and the date of the commencement and the date of the termination of holding the same, shall be proved by the Security Register.

(4) If the Company shall solicit from the Holders of any Securities any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, the Company may at its option (but is not obligated to), by Board Resolution, fix in advance a record date for the determination of Holders of Securities entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act may be given before or after such record date, but only the Holders of Securities of record at the close of business on such record date shall be deemed to be Holders for the purpose of determining whether Holders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities shall be computed as of such record date; provided that no such authorization, agreement or consent by the Holders of Securities shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date.

(5) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act by the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done or suffered to be done by the Trustee, any Security Registrar, any Paying Agent or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such Act is made upon such Security.

Section 105. *Notices, etc. to Trustee and Company.*

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of Holders or other document provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with,

12

(1) the Trustee by any Holder or the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to or with the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, or

(2) the Company by the Trustee or any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Company addressed to the attention of its Treasurer at the address of its principal office specified in the first paragraph of this instrument or at any other address previously furnished in writing to the Trustee by the Company.

Section 106. *Notice to Holders of Securities; Waiver.*

Except as otherwise expressly provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders of Securities of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given to Holders of Securities if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each Holder of a Security affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice.

In any case where notice to Holders of Securities is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder of a Security shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders of Securities. Any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given or provided. In the case by reason of the suspension of regular mail service or by reason of any other cause it shall be impracticable to give such notice by mail, then such notification as shall be made with the approval of the Trustee shall constitute a sufficient notification for every purpose hereunder.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders of Securities shall be filed with the Trustee, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

Section 107. *Language of Notices.*

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver or other Act required or permitted under this Indenture shall be in the English language, except that, if the Company so elects, any published notice may be in an official language of the country of publication.

Section 108. *Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.*

If any provision hereof limits, qualifies or conflicts with any duties under any required provision of the Trust Indenture Act imposed hereon by Section 318(c) thereof, such required provision shall control.

Section 109. *Effect of Headings and Table of Contents.*

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

Section 110. *Successors and Assigns.*

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

Section 111. *Separability Clause.*

In case any provision in this Indenture or any Security shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not, to the fullest extent permitted by law, in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

Section 112. *Benefits of Indenture.*

Nothing in this Indenture or any Security, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto, any Security Registrar, any Paying Agent and their respective successors hereunder and the Holders of Securities, and the holders of Senior Indebtedness with respect to such Series, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture.

Section 113. *Governing Law.*

This Indenture and the Securities shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York applicable to agreements made or instruments entered into and, in each case, performed in said State.

Section 114. *Legal Holidays.*

Unless otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Securities, in any case where any Interest Payment Date, Stated Maturity or Maturity of, or any other day on which a payment is due with respect to, any Security shall be a day that is not a Business Day at any Place of Payment, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or any Security other than a provision in any Security or in the Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture establishing the terms of any Security that specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu hereof) payment need not be made at such Place of Payment on such date, but such payment may be made on the next succeeding day that is a Business Day at such Place of Payment with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date, at the Stated Maturity or Maturity or on any such other payment date, as the case may be, and no interest shall accrue on the amount payable on such date or at such time for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date, Stated Maturity, Maturity or other payment date, as the case may be, to the next succeeding Business Day.

Section 115. *Counterparts; Electronic Transmission.*

electronically transmitted copies hereof or signature hereon shall, for all purposes, be deemed originals.

Section 116. *Immunity of Shareholders, Directors, Officers and Agents of the Company.*

No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture, or in any Security, or because of any indebtedness evidenced thereby, shall be had against any past, present or future shareholder, employee, officer or director, as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor, either directly or through the Company or any predecessor or successor, under any rule of law, statute or constitutional provision or by the enforcement of any assessment or by any legal or equitable proceeding or otherwise, all such liability being expressly waived and released by the acceptance of the Securities by the Holders and as part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities.

Section 117. *Waiver of Jury Trial.*

EACH OF THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES, TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY LEGAL PROCEEDING ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THIS INDENTURE, THE SECURITIES OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.

Section 118. *Force Majeure.*

In no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for any failure or delay in the performance of its obligations hereunder arising out of or caused by, directly or indirectly, forces beyond its control, including, without limitation, strikes, work stoppages, accidents, acts of war or terrorism, civil or military disturbances, nuclear or natural catastrophes or acts of God, and interruptions, loss or malfunctions of utilities, communications or computer (software and hardware) services; it being understood that the Trustee shall use reasonable efforts that are consistent with accepted practices in the banking industry to resume performance as soon as practicable under the circumstances.

ARTICLE TWO.

SECURITIES FORMS

Section 201. *Forms Generally.*

Each Security and temporary or permanent global Security issued pursuant to this Indenture shall be in the form established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution and set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, shall have such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by or pursuant to this Indenture or any indenture supplemental hereto and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the officer of the Company executing such Security as evidenced by the execution of such Security.

The Securities shall be issuable in registered form without coupons.

Definitive Securities may be printed, lithographed or engraved or produced by any combination of these methods on a steel engraved border or steel engraved borders or may be produced in any other manner, all as determined by the officer of the Company executing such Securities, as evidenced by the execution of such Securities.

In the event Securities of any Series are intended to qualify as Tier 2 capital (as that term is contemplated in 12 Code of Federal Regulations §250.166 or any successor rule or regulation thereto) of the Company, the definitive Securities representing such Securities or such Securities in global form shall bear a legend to read substantially as follows:

This Security and the obligations of the Company (as defined herein) evidenced hereby (1) are not deposits with or held by the Company and are not insured by any federal agency, including, without limitation, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation, and (2) are subordinate in right of payment to the Senior Indebtedness (as defined in the Subordinated Debt Indenture identified herein).

Section 202. *Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication.*

Subject to Section 612, the Trustee's certificate of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the Series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

as Trustee

By: _____
Authorized Signatory

Section 203. *Securities in Global Form.*

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Securities, the Securities shall not be issuable in global form. If Securities of a Series shall be issuable in temporary or permanent global form, any such Security may provide that it or any number of such Securities shall represent the aggregate amount of all Outstanding Securities of such Series (or such lesser amount as is permitted by the terms thereof) from time to time set forth in such Securities in global form endorsed thereon or reflected on the books and records of the Trustee

and may also provide that the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities represented thereby may from time to time be increased or reduced to reflect exchanges. Any endorsement of any Security in global form to reflect the amount, or any increase or decrease in the amount, or changes in the rights of Holders, of Outstanding Securities represented thereby shall be made in such manner and by such Person or Persons as shall be specified therein or pursuant to Section 301 with respect to such Security or in the Company Order to be delivered pursuant to Section 303 or Section 304 with respect thereto. Subject to the provisions of Section 303 and, if applicable, Section 304, the Trustee shall deliver and redeliver any Security in global form in the manner and upon instructions given by the Person or Persons specified therein or pursuant to Section 301 with respect to such Security or in the applicable Company Order. If a Company Order pursuant to Section 303 or Section 304 has been, or simultaneously is, delivered, any instructions by the Company with respect to a Security in global form shall be in writing but need not be accompanied by or contained in an Officers' Certificate and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel. Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this paragraph, in the event a global Security is exchangeable for definitive Securities as provided in Section 305, then, unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture with respect to the Securities of such Series, the Trustee shall deliver and redeliver such global Security to the extent necessary to effect such exchanges, shall endorse such global Security to reflect any decrease in the principal amount thereto resulting from such exchanges and shall take such other actions, all as contemplated by Section 305.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 307, unless otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Securities, payment of principal of, and any premium and interest on, any Security in temporary or permanent global form shall be made to the Person or Persons specified therein.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 308 and except as provided in the preceding paragraph, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall treat as the Holder of such principal amount of Outstanding Securities represented by a global Security, the Holder of such global Security in registered form.

ARTICLE THREE.

THE SECURITIES

Section 301. *Amount Unlimited; Issuable in Series.*

The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Company may issue up to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of a Series from time to time authorized by or pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions. The Securities shall be subordinated in right of payment to Senior Indebtedness as provided in Article Fifteen.

The Securities may be issued in one or more Series. All Securities of each Series issued under this Indenture shall in all respects be equally and ratably entitled to the benefits hereof with respect to that Series without preference, priority or distinction on account of the actual time or times of the authentication and delivery or Maturity of the Securities of such Series. Unless

expressly provided otherwise with respect to a Series, not all Securities of a Series need be issued at the same time, and, unless otherwise provided in the Securities of that Series or in this Indenture, a Series may be reopened and the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a Series may be increased and additional Securities of that Series may be issued up to a maximum aggregate principal amount authorized for that Series, as that maximum aggregate principal amount may be increased from time to time. All Securities of a Series shall rank equally among themselves and with the other existing and future indebtedness of the Company that is subordinated in right of payment to the Senior Indebtedness to the same extent as the Securities of that Series.

The Company may from time to time establish one or more Series pursuant to this Indenture. A Series shall be established by (1) the execution and delivery of a Supplemental Indenture or (2) the adoption of a Board Resolution by the Board of Directors establishing that Series. The specific terms and conditions of the Securities of any Series established shall be determined and set either (1) by the Supplemental Indenture that establishes the Series, (2) if the Series is established by a Supplemental Indenture, to the extent that those specific terms and conditions are not determined and set by that Supplemental Indenture, by the adoption of a Board Resolution or Board Resolutions by the Board of Directors and, to the extent that those specific terms and conditions are not determined and set by the Supplemental Indenture or by the adoption of a Board Resolution or Board Resolutions by the Board of Directors or by a combination of those means of determining and setting the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series, by the action of one or more Authorized Officers pursuant to authority to determine and set the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series specifically delegated by the Board of Directors to that Authorized Officer or those Authorized Officers or (3) if the Series is established by action of the Board of Directors, to the extent that those specific terms and conditions are not set by the adoption of a Board Resolution or Board Resolutions by the Board of Directors, by the action of one or more Authorized Officers pursuant to authority to determine and set the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series specifically delegated by the Board of Directors to that Authorized Officer or those Authorized Officers. If the specific terms and specific conditions of the Securities of a Series are determined and set by action of the Board of Directors, that action shall be evidenced by a Board Resolution. If the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series established by action of the Board of Directors are determined and set by an Authorized Officer or Authorized Officers pursuant to authority delegated to them by the Board of Directors, that action shall be evidenced by an Officers' Certificate executed by the Authorized Officer or Authorized Officers determining and setting those terms and conditions, which certificate shall also be attested to by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company. If the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series established by action of the Board of Directors are determined and set by an Authorized Officer or Authorized Officers pursuant to authority delegated to them by the Board of Directors and an Officers' Certificate has been delivered in connection with the establishment of the terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series and the issuance of the Securities of that Series, an additional Officers' Certificate shall not be required to be delivered in connection with any subsequent issuance of additional Securities of that Series.

Series has been established and the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of the Series have been determined and set and attaching to that Officers' Certificate (1) the Board Resolution establishing the Series, (2) the Board Resolution or Board Resolutions determining and setting the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series or providing for the delegation of authority to one or more Authorized Officers to determine and set the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series and (3) if an Authorized Officer or Authorized Officers has determined and set the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of that Series, attaching the Certificate evidencing the action of that Authorized Officer or those Authorized Officers. The Officers' Certificate that is required to be delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the immediately preceding sentence, may be provided before or at the time of the consummation of the first issuance of Securities of the Series to which the Officers' Certificate relates.

Each Board Resolution of the Company determining and setting the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series, each Officers' Certificate evidencing the specific terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series, and each Supplemental Indenture setting forth the terms and conditions of the Securities of a Series, shall set forth the following information as to the terms and conditions of that Series:

- (1) the title of the Securities of such Series;
- (2) the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such Series to be initially issued and sold by the Company and any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of Securities of such Series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of such Series pursuant to [Section 304](#), [Section 305](#), [Section 306](#), [Section 905](#) or [Section 1107](#) or upon surrender in part of any Security for conversion or exchange into Common Stock or other securities or property pursuant to its terms), and if from time to time the Company may issue additional Securities of such Series or establish additional terms of the Securities of such Series;
- (3) if any of such Securities of such Series are to be issuable in global form, when any of such Securities are to be issuable in global form and (i) whether such Securities are to be issued in temporary or permanent global form or both, (ii) the conditions upon which Securities in definitive form will be issued to beneficial owners of Securities of Series; (iii) whether beneficial owners of interests in any such global Security may exchange such interests for Securities of the same Series and of like tenor and of any authorized form and denomination, and the circumstances under which any such exchanges may occur, if other than in the manner specified in [Section 305](#), (iv) the name of the Depository with respect to any such global Security and (v) if applicable and in addition to the Persons specified in [Section 305](#), the Person or Persons who shall be entitled to make any endorsements on any such global Security and to give the instructions and take the other actions with respect to such global Security contemplated by the first paragraph of [Section 201](#);
- (4) the date or dates, or the method or methods, if any, by which such date or dates shall be determined, on which the principal and premium, if any, of such Securities is payable;

- (5) the rate or rates at which such Securities shall bear interest, if any, or the method or methods, if any, by which such rate or rates are to be determined, the date or dates, if any, from which such interest shall accrue or the method or methods, if any, by which such date or dates are to be determined, the Interest Payment Dates, if any, on which such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date, if any, for the interest payable on such Securities on any Interest Payment Date, the notice, if any, to Holders regarding the determination of interest on a floating rate Security and the manner of giving such notice, and the basis upon which interest shall be calculated if other than that of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months;
- (6) if in addition to or other than Dallas, Texas, the place or places where the principal of, any premium and interest on, such Securities shall be payable, any of such Securities may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, any of such Securities may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, and notices or demands to or upon the Company in respect of such Securities and this Indenture may be served;
- (7) whether any of the Securities are subject to prepayment and, if so, any premium payable in connection with any such prepayment;
- (8) whether any of such Securities are to be redeemable at the option of the Company and, if so, the date or dates on which, the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the other terms and conditions upon which such Securities may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;
- (9) if the Company is obligated to redeem or purchase any of such Securities pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provision or at the option of any Holder thereof and, if so, the date or dates on which, the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the other terms and conditions upon which such Securities shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation, and any provisions for the remarketing of such Securities so redeemed or purchased;
- (10) the denominations in which any of such Securities shall be issuable if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof;
- (11) whether the Securities of the Series will be convertible into and/or exchangeable for Common Stock or other securities or property, and if so, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable, and any deletions from or modifications or additions to this Indenture to permit or to facilitate the issuance of such convertible or exchangeable Securities or the administration thereof;
- (12) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of any of such Securities that shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to [Section 502](#) or the method by which such portion is to be determined;
- (13) if the amount of payments of principal of, or any premium or interest on, such Securities may be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method or methods (which index, formula or method or methods may be based, without limitation, on one or more commodities, equity indices or other indices), and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined and paid or payable;

(14) any affirmative or negative covenants to which the Company shall be subject or obligated to perform so long as any Security of such Series is Outstanding;

(15) any deletions from, modifications of, or additions to, the Events of Default or covenants of the Company with respect to any of such Securities (whether or not such Events of Default or covenants are consistent with the Events of Default or covenants set forth herein), and if Section 1006 shall be applicable with respect to any such additional covenants;

(16) if any one or more of Section 401 relating to satisfaction and discharge, Section 402(2) relating to defeasance or Section 402(3) relating to covenant defeasance shall not be applicable to the Securities of such Series, and any covenants in addition to or other than those specified in Section 402(3) relating to the Securities of such Series that shall be subject to covenant defeasance, and, if the Holders of such Securities have the right to convert or exchange such Securities into Common Stock or other securities or property, if the right to effect such conversion or exchange will be subject to satisfaction and discharge pursuant to Section 401 or to defeasance or covenant defeasance pursuant to Section 402, and any deletions from, or modifications or additions to, the provisions of Article Four (including any modification which would permit satisfaction and discharge, defeasance or covenant defeasance to be effected with respect to less than all of the outstanding Securities of such Series) in respect of the Securities of such Series;

(17) if any of such Securities are issuable in global form and are to be issuable in definitive form (whether upon original issue or upon exchange of a temporary Security) only upon receipt of certain certificates or other documents or satisfaction of other conditions, then the form and terms of such certificates, documents or conditions;

(18) if not the Trustee, the identity of each Security Registrar, Paying Agent or Authenticating Agent with respect to such Securities;

(19) the Person to whom any interest on any Security of such Series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name the Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, and the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a temporary global Security will be paid if other than in the manner provided in this Indenture;

(20) the terms pursuant to which the Securities of such Series will be made subordinate in right of payment to Senior Indebtedness, the definition of such Senior Indebtedness with respect to such Series and any changes in Article Fifteen with respect to such Series; and a Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture, as the case may be, establishing the terms of such Series shall expressly state which articles, sections or other provisions thereof constitute the "Subordination Provisions" with respect to the Securities of such Series; and

(21) any other terms of such Securities and any deletions from or modifications or additions to this Indenture in respect of such Securities.

The terms of the Securities of any Series may provide, without limitation, that the Securities shall be authenticated and delivered by the Trustee on original issue from time to time upon telephonic or written order of persons designated in the Board Resolution, Officers'

Certificate or supplemental indenture, as the case may be, pertaining to such Series of Securities (telephonic instructions to be promptly confirmed in writing by such person) and that such persons are authorized to determine, consistent with such Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture, such terms and conditions of the Securities of such Series as are specified in such Board Resolution, Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture. All Securities of any one Series need not be issued at the same time and, if so provided by the Company as contemplated by this Section 301, a Series may be reopened from time to time without the consent of any Holders for issuances of additional Securities of such Series or to establish additional terms of such Series of Securities.

If any of the terms of the Securities of any Series shall be established by action taken by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, the Board Resolution shall be delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate setting forth the terms of such Series.

Section 302. *Currency; Denominations.*

The principal of, and any premium and interest on, the Securities shall be payable in Dollars. Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, Securities shall be issuable in registered form without coupons in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof.

Section 303. *Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating.*

Securities shall be executed on behalf of the Company by its Chairman, Vice Chairman, Chief Executive Officer, its President or one of its Vice Presidents and by its Treasurer, one of its Assistant Treasurers, its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries and may (but need not) have its corporate seal or a facsimile thereof reproduced thereon. The signature of any of these officers on the Securities may be manual or facsimile.

Securities bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities executed by the Company, to the Trustee for authentication and, provided that the Board Resolution and Officers' Certificate or supplemental indenture or indentures with respect to such Securities referred to in Section 301 and a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities have been delivered to the Trustee, the Trustee in accordance with the Company Order and subject to the provisions hereof and of such Securities shall authenticate and deliver such Securities. In authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 315(a) through Section 315(d) of the Trust Indenture Act) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel to the following effect, which Opinion of Counsel may contain such assumptions, qualifications and limitations as such counsel shall deem appropriate:

- (a) the form or forms and terms of such Securities have been established in conformity with Section 201 and Section 301 of this Indenture;
- (b) all conditions precedent set forth in Section 201, Section 301 and Section 303 of this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of such Securities have been complied with and that such Securities, when completed by appropriate insertions (if applicable), executed by duly Authorized Officers of the Company, delivered by duly authorized officers of the Company to the Trustee for authentication pursuant to this Indenture, and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms, except as enforcement thereof may be subject to or limited by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, arrangement, fraudulent conveyance, fraudulent transfer or other similar laws relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally, and subject to general principles of equity (regardless of whether enforcement is sought in a proceeding in equity or at law).

If all the Securities of any Series are not to be issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver an Opinion of Counsel at the time of issuance of each Security, but such opinion, with such modifications as counsel shall deem appropriate, shall be delivered at or before the time of issuance of the first Security of such Series. After any such first delivery, any separate request by the Company that the Trustee authenticate Securities of such Series for original issue will be deemed to be a certification by the Company that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture relating to authentication and delivery of such Securities continue to have been complied with.

The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate or to cause an Authenticating Agent to authenticate any Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee or if the Trustee, being advised by counsel, determines that such action may not lawfully be taken.

Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

No Security shall be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose, unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for in Section 202 or Section 612 executed by or on behalf of the Trustee or by the Authenticating Agent by the manual signature of one of its authorized signatories. Such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder.

Section 304. *Temporary Securities.*

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities, the Company may execute and deliver to the Trustee and, upon Company Order, the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the manner provided in Section 303, temporary Securities in lieu thereof which are printed, lithographed,

typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, in registered form, without coupons, and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the officers of the Company executing such Securities may determine, as conclusively evidenced by their execution of such Securities. Such temporary Securities may be in global form.

Except in the case of temporary Securities in global form, which shall be exchanged in accordance with the provisions set forth in this Indenture or the provisions established pursuant to Section 301, if temporary Securities are issued, the Company shall cause definitive Securities to be prepared without unreasonable delay. Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, after the preparation of definitive Securities of the same Series and containing terms and provisions that are identical to those of any temporary Securities, such temporary Securities shall be exchangeable for such definitive Securities upon surrender of such temporary Securities at an Office or Agency for such Securities, without charge to any Holder thereof. Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a like principal amount of definitive Securities of authorized denominations of the same Series and containing identical terms and provisions. Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture with respect to a temporary global Security, until so exchanged the temporary Securities of any Series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such Series.

Section 305. *Registration, Transfer and Exchange.*

With respect to the Securities of each Series, if any, the Company shall cause to be kept a register (each such register being herein sometimes referred to as the "Security Register") at an Office or Agency for such Series in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of the Securities of such Series and of transfers of the Securities of such Series. Such Office or Agency shall be the "Security Registrar" for that Series of Securities. Unless otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities, the initial Security Registrar for each Series of Securities shall be as specified in the penultimate paragraph of Section 1002. The Company shall have the right to remove and replace from time to time the Security Registrar for any Series of Securities; provided that no such removal or replacement shall be effective until a successor Security Registrar with respect to such Series of Securities shall have been appointed by the Company and shall have accepted such appointment. In the event that the Trustee shall not be or shall cease to be Security Registrar with respect to a Series of Securities, it shall have the right to examine the Security Register for such Series at all reasonable times. There shall be only one Security Register for each Series of Securities.

Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Security of any Series at any Office or Agency for such Series, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee or transferees, one or more new Securities of the same Series denominated as authorized in or pursuant to this Indenture, of a like aggregate principal amount bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding and containing identical terms and provisions.

Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, at the option of the Holder, Securities of any Series may be exchanged for other Securities of the same Series containing identical terms and provisions, in any authorized denominations, and of a like aggregate principal amount, upon surrender of the Securities to be exchanged at any Office or Agency for such Series. Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities that the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, the global Securities of any Series shall be exchangeable for definitive certificated Securities of such Series only if (i) the Depository for such global Securities notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as a Depository for such global Securities or at any time the Depository for such global Securities ceases to be a clearing agency registered as such under the Exchange Act, if so required by applicable law or regulation, and no successor Depository for such Securities shall have been appointed within 90 days of such notification or of the Company becoming aware of the Depository's ceasing to be so registered, as the case may be, (ii) the Company, in its sole discretion, determines that the Securities of such Series shall no longer be represented by one or more global Securities and executes and delivers to the Trustee a Company Order to the effect that such global Securities shall be so exchangeable, or (iii) an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing with respect to such Securities.

If the beneficial owners of interests in a global Security are entitled to exchange such interests for definitive Securities as the result of an event described in clause (i), (ii) or (iii) of the preceding paragraph, then without unnecessary delay, but in any event not later than the earliest date on which such interests may be so exchanged, the Company shall deliver to the Trustee definitive Securities in such form and denominations as are required by or pursuant to this Indenture, and of the same Series, containing identical terms and in aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such global Security, executed by the Company. On or after the earliest date on which such interests may be so exchanged, such global Security shall be surrendered from time to time by the Depository (or its custodian) as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto (which the Company agrees to deliver), and in accordance with instructions given to the Trustee and the Depository (which instructions shall be in writing but need not be contained in or accompanied by an Officers' Certificate or be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel), as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto to the Trustee, as the Company's agent for such purpose, to be exchanged, in whole or in part, for definitive Securities as described above without charge. The Trustee shall authenticate and make available for delivery, in exchange for each portion of such surrendered global Security, a like aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of the same Series of authorized denominations and of like tenor as the portion of such global Security to be exchanged, which shall be in the form of registered Securities, and which shall be in such denominations and registered in such names, as shall be specified by the Depository; provided, however, that no such exchanges may occur during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of Securities of the same Series to be redeemed and ending on the relevant Redemption Date. Promptly following any such exchange in part, such global Security shall be returned by the Trustee to such Depository (or its custodian) or such other Depository (or its custodian) referred to above in accordance with the instructions of the Company referred to above, and the Trustee shall endorse such global Security to reflect the decrease in the principal

25

amount thereof resulting from such exchange. If a Security is issued in exchange for any portion of a global Security after the close of business at the Office or Agency for such Security where such exchange occurs on or after (i) any Regular Record Date for such Security and before the opening of business at such Office or Agency on the next Interest Payment Date, or (ii) any Special Record Date for such Security and before the opening of business at such Office or Agency on the related proposed date for payment of interest or Defaulted Interest, as the case may be, interest shall not be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, in respect of such Security, but shall be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, only to the Person to whom interest in respect of such portion of such global Security shall be payable in accordance with the provisions of this Indenture.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company evidencing the same debt and entitling the Holders thereof to the same benefits under this Indenture as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange or redemption shall (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar for such Security) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar for such Security duly executed by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

No service charge shall be made for any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, or any redemption or repayment of Securities, or any conversion or exchange of Securities for other types of securities or property, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 304, Section 905 or Section 1107, or upon surrender in part of any Security for conversion or exchange into Common Stock or other securities or property pursuant to its terms, in each case not involving any transfer.

Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, the Company shall not be required (i) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the selection for redemption of Securities of like tenor and terms and of the same Series under Section 1103 and ending at the close of business on the day of such selection, or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Security, or portion thereof, so selected for redemption, except in the case of any Security to be redeemed in part, the portion thereof not to be redeemed.

The Trustee shall have no obligation or duty to monitor, determine or inquire as to compliance with any restrictions on transfer imposed under this Indenture or under applicable law with respect to any transfer of any interest in any Security (including any transfers between or among Depository participants or beneficial owners of interests in any global Security) other than to require delivery of such certificates and other documentation or evidence as are expressly required by, and to do so if and when expressly required by the terms of, this Indenture, and to examine the same to determine substantial compliance as to form with the express requirements

26

Neither the Trustee nor any Paying Agent shall have any responsibility for any actions taken or not taken by the Depositary.

Section 306. *Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities.*

If any mutilated Security is surrendered to the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section 306, the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same Series containing identical terms and of like principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

If there be delivered to the Company and to the Trustee (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security, and (ii) such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustee that such Security has been acquired by a bona fide purchaser, the Company shall execute and, upon the Company's request the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for or in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security, a new Security of the same Series containing identical terms and of like principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding.

Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 306, in case the outstanding principal balance of any mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, pay such Security.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith.

Every new Security issued pursuant to this Section in lieu of any destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall constitute a separate obligation of the Company, whether or not the destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of such Series duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section, as amended or supplemented pursuant to this Indenture with respect to particular Securities or generally, shall (to the extent lawful) be exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities.

Section 307. *Payment of Interest; Rights to Interest Preserved.*

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, any interest on any Security that shall be payable, and are punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid to the Person in whose name such Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered as of the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest.

27

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, any interest on any Security that shall be payable, but shall not be punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for such Security (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder thereof on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder; and such Defaulted Interest may be paid by the Company, at its election in each case, as provided in clause (1) or (2) below:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Person in whose name such Security (or a Predecessor Security thereof) shall be registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit on or prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when so deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Person entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this Clause provided. Thereupon, the Company shall fix or cause to be fixed a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Company (or, upon the written request of the Company, the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company), shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to the Holder of such Security (or a Predecessor Security thereof) at the Holder's address as it appears in the Security Register not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. The Company may, in its discretion, in the name and at the expense of the Company cause a similar notice to be published at least once in an Authorized Newspaper of general circulation in the City of Dallas, Texas, but such publication shall not be a condition precedent to the establishment of such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Person in whose name such Security (or a Predecessor Security thereof) shall be registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Security may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this Clause, such payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities of any particular Series, at the option of the Company, interest on Securities that bear interest may be paid by mailing a check to the address of the Person entitled thereto as such address shall appear in the Security Register or by transfer to an account maintained by the payee with a bank located in the United States of America.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section and Section 305, each Security

28

delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

Section 308. *Persons Deemed Owners.*

Prior to due presentment of a Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustee and any agent of the Company or the Trustee may treat the Person in whose name such Security is registered in the Security Register as the owner of such Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of, any premium and (subject to Section 305 and Section 307) interest on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not any payment with respect to such Security shall be overdue, and neither the Company, the Trustee or any agent of the Company or the Trustee shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

No holder of any beneficial interest in any global Security held on its behalf by a Depository shall have any rights under this Indenture with respect to such global Security, and such Depository may be treated by the Company, the Trustee, and any agent of the Company or the Trustee as the owner of such global Security for all purposes whatsoever. None of the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of a global Security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by the applicable Depository, as a Holder, with respect to a global Security or impair, as between such Depository and the owners of beneficial interests in such global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such Depository (or its nominee) as the Holder of such global Security.

Section 309. *Cancellation.*

All Securities surrendered for payment, redemption, registration of transfer, exchange or conversion or for credit against any sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than the Trustee, be delivered to the Trustee, and any such Securities, as well as Securities surrendered directly to the Trustee for any such purpose, shall be cancelled promptly by the Trustee. The Company may at any time deliver to the Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and all Securities so delivered shall be cancelled promptly by the Trustee. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section, except as expressly permitted by or pursuant to this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by the Trustee shall be disposed of in accordance with its procedure for the disposition of cancelled Securities, and the Trustee upon the written request of the Company shall deliver to the Company a certificate of such disposition, or if directed by a Company Order returned to the Company.

29

Section 310. *Computation of Interest.*

Except as otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture or in the Securities of any Series, interest on the Securities shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months.

ARTICLE FOUR.

SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE OF INDENTURE

Section 401. *Satisfaction and Discharge.*

Unless, pursuant to Section 301, the provisions of this Section 401 shall not be applicable with respect to the Securities of any Series, upon the direction of the Company by a Company Order, this Indenture shall cease to be of further effect with respect to any Series of Securities specified in such Company Order, and the Trustee, on receipt of a Company Order, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such Series, when

- (1) either
 - (a) all Securities of such Series theretofore authenticated and delivered (other than (i) Securities of such Series that have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 306 and (ii) Securities of such Series for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 1003) have been delivered to the Trustee for cancellation; or
 - (b) all Securities of such Series and not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation (i) have become due and payable, or (ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or (iii) if redeemable at the option of the Company, are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustee in the name, and at the expense, of the Company, and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds in trust for such purpose, money in Dollars in an amount sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including the principal of, and any premium and interest on such Securities, to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Maturity thereof, as the case may be;
- (2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to the Outstanding Securities of such Series; and
- (3) the Company has delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such Series have been complied with.

30

In the event there are Securities of two or more Series Outstanding hereunder, the Trustee for the Series as to which the Indenture is to be discharged shall be required to execute an instrument acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture only if requested to do so with respect to Securities of such Series as to which it is Trustee and if the other conditions thereto are met.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture with respect to any Series of Securities, the obligations of the Company to the Trustee under Section 607 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustee pursuant to subclause (b) of clause (1) of this Section, the obligations of the Company and the Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series under Section 305, Section 306, Section 403, Section 404, Section 1002 and Section 1003, any rights of Holders of the Securities of such Series (unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of such Series) to require the Company to repurchase or repay, and any rights of Holders of the Securities of such Series (unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of such Series) to convert or exchange, and the obligations of the Company to convert or exchange, such Securities into Common Stock or other securities or property, shall survive.

Section 402. *Defeasance and Covenant Defeasance.*

(1) Unless, pursuant to Section 301, either or both of (i) defeasance of the Securities of or within a Series under clause (2) of this Section 402 or (ii) covenant defeasance of the Securities of or within a Series under clause (3) of this Section 402 shall not be applicable with respect to the Securities of such Series, then such provisions, together with the other provisions of this Section 402 (with such modifications thereto as may be specified pursuant to Section 301 with respect to any Securities), shall be applicable to such Securities, and the Company may at its option by Board Resolution, at any time, with respect to the Securities of or within such Series, elect to have Section 402(2) or Section 402(3) be applied to such Outstanding Securities upon compliance with the conditions set forth below in this Section 402. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of any Series, defeasance under clause (2) of this Section 402 and covenant defeasance under clause (3) of this Section 402 may be effected only with respect to all, and not less than all, of the Outstanding Securities of any Series. To the extent that the terms of any Security established in or pursuant to this Indenture permit the Company or any Holder thereof to extend the date on which any payment of principal of, or premium, if any, or interest, if any, on, such Security is due and payable, then unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301, the right to extend such date shall terminate upon defeasance or covenant defeasance, as the case may be.

(2) Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section 402(2) with respect to any Securities of or within a Series, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations with respect to such Outstanding Securities on the date the conditions set forth in clause (4) of this Section 402 are satisfied (hereinafter, "defeasance"). For this purpose, such defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Outstanding Securities, which shall thereafter be deemed to be "Outstanding" only for the purposes of clause (5) of this Section 402 and the other Sections of this Indenture referred to in clauses (i) through (iv) of this paragraph, and to have satisfied all of its other obligations under such Securities and this

31

Indenture insofar as such Securities are concerned (and the Trustee, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (i) the rights of Holders of such Outstanding Securities to receive, solely (except as provided in clause (ii) below) from the trust fund described in clause (4)(a) of this Section 402 and as more fully set forth in this Section 402 and Section 403, payments in respect of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on, such Securities when such payments are due, (ii) the obligations of the Company and the Trustee with respect to such Securities under Section 305, Section 306, Section 1002 and Section 1003, any rights of Holders of the Securities of such Series (unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of such Series) to require the Company to repurchase or repay, and any rights of Holders of such Securities (unless otherwise provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of such Series) to convert or exchange, and the obligations of the Company to convert or exchange, such Securities into Common Stock or other securities or property, (iii) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustee hereunder and (iv) this Section 402 and Section 403 and Section 404. The Company may exercise its option under this Section 402(2) notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under Section 402(3) with respect to such Securities.

(3) Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section 402(3) with respect to any Securities of or within a Series, the Company shall be released from its obligations under clauses (ii) and (iii) of Section 1004 and under Section 1005, Section 1006 and Section 1007 and any other covenant applicable to such Securities with respect to such Securities shall cease to be applicable to such Securities on and after the date the conditions set forth in clause (4) of this Section 402 are satisfied (hereinafter, "covenant defeasance"), and such Securities shall thereafter be deemed to be not "Outstanding" for the purposes of any direction, waiver, consent or declaration or Act of Holders (and the consequences of any thereof) in connection with any such covenant, but shall continue to be deemed "Outstanding" for all other purposes hereunder. For this purpose, such covenant defeasance means that with respect to such Outstanding Securities, the Company may omit to comply with, and shall have no liability in respect of, any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such Section or any such other covenant, whether directly or indirectly, by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such Section or such other covenant or by reason of reference in any such Section or such other covenant to any other provision herein or in any other document and such omission to comply shall not constitute a default or an Event of Default under Section 501(4) or Section 501(8) or otherwise, as the case may be, but, except as specified above, the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities shall be unaffected thereby.

(4) The following shall be the conditions to application of clause (2) or (3) of this Section 402 to any Outstanding Securities of or within a Series:

- (a) The Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with the Trustee (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of Section 608 who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Section 402 applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, (1) an amount in Dollars or (2) Government Obligations that through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance

32

with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment of principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on such Securities, money or (3) a combination thereof, in any case, in an amount, sufficient, without consideration of any reinvestment of such principal and interest, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) to pay and discharge, (y) the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any, on, such Outstanding Securities on the Stated Maturity of such principal or installment of principal or interest or the applicable Redemption Date, as the case may be, and (z) any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments applicable to such Outstanding Securities on the day on which such payments are due and payable in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and of such Securities.

- (b) Such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a default under, this Indenture or any other material agreement or instrument to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or by which it is bound.
- (c) No Event of Default or event which with notice or lapse of time or both would become an Event of Default with respect to such Securities shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit, and, solely in the case of defeasance under Section 402(2), no Event of Default with respect to such Securities under clause (5) or (6) of Section 501 or event which with notice or lapse of time or both would become an Event of Default with respect to such Securities under clause (5) or (6) of Section 501 shall have occurred and be continuing at any time during the period ending on and including the 91st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition to defeasance under Section 402(2) shall not be deemed satisfied until the expiration of such period).
- (d) In the case of defeasance pursuant to Section 402(2), the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an opinion of independent counsel reasonably acceptable to the Trustee stating that (x) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (y) since the date of this Indenture there has been a change in applicable federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion of independent counsel shall confirm that, the Holders of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such defeasance and will be subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such defeasance had not occurred; or, in the case of covenant defeasance pursuant to Section 402(3), the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an opinion of independent counsel reasonably acceptable to the Trustee to the effect that the Holders of such Outstanding Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for federal income tax purposes as a result of such covenant defeasance and will be

33

subject to federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such covenant defeasance had not occurred.

- (e) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent to the defeasance or covenant defeasance, as the case may be, under this Indenture have been complied with.
- (f) If the moneys or Government Obligations or combination thereof, as the case may be, deposited under clause (a) above are sufficient to pay the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on, such Securities provided such Securities are redeemed on a particular Redemption Date, the Company shall have given the Trustee irrevocable instructions to redeem such Securities on such date and to provide notice of such redemption to Holders as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture.
- (g) No event or condition will exist pursuant to the terms of Section 301(20) that would prevent the Company from making payments of principal and premium, if any, and interest on the Securities at the date of the irrevocable deposit referred to above.
- (h) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Section 402(4), such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall be effected in compliance with any additional or substitute terms, conditions or limitations that may be imposed on the Company in connection therewith pursuant to Section 301.

(5) Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money and Government Obligations (or other property as may be provided pursuant to Section 301) (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee—collectively for purposes of this Section 402(5) and Section 403, the "Trustee") pursuant to clause (4)(a) of Section 402 in respect of any Outstanding Securities of any Series shall be held in trust and applied by the Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (other than the Company or any Subsidiary or Affiliate of the Company acting as Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Holders of such Securities of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal (and premium, if any) and interest but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

The Company shall pay and indemnify the Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge, imposed on or assessed against the Government Obligations deposited pursuant to this Section 402 or the principal or interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of such Outstanding Securities.

Anything in this Section 402 to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or Government Obligations (or other property and any proceeds therefrom) held by it as provided in clause

34

(4)(a) of this Section 402 which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect a defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, in accordance with this Section 402.

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 1003, all money and Government Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Section 401 or Section 402 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities subject to discharge under Section 401 or defeasance or covenant defeasance under Section 402, and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustee may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal, premium and interest for whose payment such money has or Government Obligations have been deposited with or received by the Trustee; but such money and Government Obligations need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

Section 404. *Reinstatement.*

If the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee appointed pursuant to Section 402(4)(a)) or any Paying Agent is unable to apply any moneys or Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 401(1) or Section 402(4)(a) to pay any principal of or premium, if any, or interest, if any, on the Securities of any Series by reason of any legal proceeding or any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the Company's obligations under this Indenture and the Securities of such Series shall be revived and reinstated as though no such deposit had occurred, until such time as the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such moneys and Government Obligations to pay the principal of and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on the Securities of such Series as contemplated by Section 401 or Section 402 as the case may be, and Section 403; provided, however, that if the Company makes any payment of the principal of or premium, if any, or interest if any, on the Securities of such Series following the reinstatement of its obligations as aforesaid, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of such Securities to receive such payment from the funds held by the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) or Paying Agent.

Section 405. *Effect on Subordination Provisions.*

Unless otherwise expressly provided pursuant to Section 301 with respect to the Securities of any Series, the provisions of Article Fifteen hereof, insofar as they pertain to the Securities of such Series, and the Subordination Provisions of the Securities of such Series established pursuant to Section 301(20), are hereby expressly made subject to the provisions for, and to the right of the Company to effect, the satisfaction and discharge of all of the Securities of such Series as set forth in and pursuant to Section 401 and the provisions for, and to the right of the Company to effect, defeasance and covenant defeasance of all the Securities of such Series or designated Securities within such Series as set forth in and pursuant to Section 402. As a result, and anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding, if the Company complies with the

provisions of Section 401 to effect the satisfaction and discharge of all of the Securities of a Series or complies with the provisions of Section 402 to effect the defeasance or covenant defeasance of designated Securities within a Series (which may be all of the Securities of such Series), upon the effectiveness of such satisfaction and discharge pursuant to Section 401 with respect to all of the Securities of such Series or of defeasance or covenant defeasance pursuant to Section 402 with respect to the Securities within such Series designated for such defeasance or covenant defeasance, all of the Securities of such Series, in the case of satisfaction and discharge pursuant to Section 401, or, in the case of defeasance or covenant defeasance pursuant to Section 402, the Securities of such Series as to which defeasance or covenant defeasance, as the case may be, shall have become effective shall thereupon cease to be so subordinated in right of payment to the Senior Indebtedness and shall no longer be subject to the provisions of Article Fifteen or the Subordination Provisions of such Securities established pursuant to Section 301(20) and, without limitation to the foregoing, all moneys, Government Obligations and other securities or property deposited with the Trustee (or other qualifying trustee) in trust in connection with such satisfaction and discharge, defeasance or covenant defeasance, as the case may be, and all proceeds therefrom may be applied to pay the principal of, and premium, if any, and interest, if any, on, such Securities as and when the same shall become due and payable notwithstanding the provisions of Article Fifteen or such Subordination Provisions without regard to whether any or all of the Senior Indebtedness then outstanding shall have been paid or otherwise provided for.

ARTICLE FIVE.

REMEDIES

Section 501. *Events of Default.*

"Events of Default," wherever used in this Indenture with respect to Securities of any Series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree, or order of any court or any order, rule, or regulation of any administrative or governmental body) unless such event is specifically deleted or modified in or pursuant to the supplemental indenture, Board Resolution or Officers' Certificate establishing such Series of Securities or the terms of the Securities of such Series pursuant to this Indenture:

- (1) default in the payment of any interest on any of the Securities of such Series when such interest becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or
- (2) default in the payment of any principal of or premium, if any, on any of the Securities of such Series when due (whether at Maturity or otherwise and whether payable in cash or in shares of Common Stock or other securities or property); or
- (3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund payment or payment under any analogous provision when due with respect to any of the Securities of such Series; or

- (4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or warranty of the Company in this Indenture or any Security of such Series (other than a covenant or warranty for which the consequences of breach or nonperformance are addressed elsewhere in this Section 501 or a covenant or warranty which has expressly been included in this Indenture, whether or not by means of a supplemental indenture, solely for the benefit of Securities of a Series other than such Series), and continuance of such default or breach (without such default or breach having been waived in accordance of the provisions of this Indenture) for a period of 90 days after there has been given, by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustee or to the Company and the Trustee

by the Holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder; or

(5) the entry of a decree or order for relief in respect of the Company by a court having jurisdiction in the premises in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, or reorganization law, now or hereafter in effect of the United States of America or any political subdivision thereof, and such decree or order shall have continued unstayed and in effect for a period of 60 consecutive days; or

(6) the commencement by the Company of a voluntary case under any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization law, now or hereafter in effect of the United States of America or any political subdivision thereof, or the consent by the Company to the entry of a decree or order for relief in an involuntary case or proceeding under any such law; or

(7) any other Event of Default provided in or pursuant to this Indenture with respect to Securities of such Series.

Section 502. *Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment.*

Unless the supplemental indenture, Board Resolution or Officers' Certificate establishing or evidencing the establishment of a Series of Securities or the terms of the Securities of a Series pursuant to this Indenture shall provide otherwise, if an Event of Default (other than an Event of Default specified in clause (5) or (6) of Section 501) with respect to Securities of any Series occurs and is continuing, then either the Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series may declare the principal of all the Securities of such Series, or such lesser amount as may be provided for in the Securities of such Series, and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, thereon to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by the Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal or such lesser amount, as the case may be, and such accrued and unpaid interest shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in clause (5) or (6) of Section 501 occurs, then the principal amount of all of the Securities of such Series Outstanding, or such lesser amount as may be provided for in the Securities of such Series, and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all Securities of all Series Outstanding shall become and be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustee or any Holder of the Securities of such Series.

At any time after the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to Securities of one or more Series and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained

37

by the Trustee as provided below in this Article Five, the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of all affected Series (voting as one class), by written notice to the Company and the Trustee may waive all defaults with respect to all affected Series, and may rescind and annul the consequences of the Event of Default, if:

(1) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum of money sufficient to pay (or, to the extent that the terms of the Securities of such Series established pursuant to Section 301 expressly provide for payment to be made in shares of Common Stock or other securities or property, shares of Common Stock or other securities or property, together with cash in lieu of fractional shares or securities, sufficient to pay)

(a) all overdue installments of any interest on any Securities of such Series that have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration,

(b) the principal of and any premium on any Securities of such Series which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, interest thereon at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, provided for in or with respect to such Securities, or, if no such rate or rates are so provided, at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, of interest borne by such Securities,

(c) to the extent permitted by applicable law, interest upon installments of any interest, if any, which have become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, provided for in or with respect to such Securities, or, if no such rate or rates are so provided, at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, of interest borne by such Securities, and

(d) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustee hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due the Trustee under Section 607; and

(2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of all affected Series other than the nonpayment of the principal of, or any premium and interest on, Securities of the affected Series that shall have become due solely by such acceleration, shall have been cured or waived as provided in Section 513.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

For all purposes under this Indenture, if a portion of the principal of any Original Issue Discount Securities shall have been accelerated and declared due and payable pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, then, from and after the date of such Event of Default, unless such Event of Default has been rescinded and annulled as provided above, the principal amount of such Original Issue Discount Securities shall be deemed, for all purposes under this Indenture, to be such portion of the principal as shall be due and payable as a result of such acceleration, and the payment of such portion of the principal as shall be due and payable as a result of such acceleration, together with interest, if any, on such portion and all other amounts owing under

38

such Original Issue Discount Security, shall constitute payment in full of such Original Issue Discount Securities.

Section 503. *Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.*

The Company covenants that if:

- (1) default is made in the payment of any interest on any Security when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days,
- (2) default is made in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any Security at its Maturity, or
- (3) default is made in the making or satisfaction of any sinking fund or analogous obligation when the same becomes due pursuant to the terms of any Security, the Company will, upon demand of the Trustee, pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities, the whole amount then due and payable with respect to such Securities, with interest upon the overdue principal, any premium and, to the extent permitted by applicable law, upon any overdue installments of interest at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, provided for or with respect to such Securities or, if no such rate or rates are so provided, at the rate or respective rates, as the case may be, of interest borne by such Securities, subject, however, to any limitation on such obligation of the Company to pay such amounts as shall be set forth in the supplemental indenture, Board Resolution or Officers' Certificate establishing or evidencing the establishment of a Series of Securities or the terms of the Series of Securities of which such Security is a part pursuant to this Indenture, and, in addition thereto, such further amount of money as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel and all other amounts due to the Trustee under Section 607.

If the Company fails to pay the money it is required to pay the Trustee pursuant to the preceding paragraph forthwith upon the demand of the Trustee, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any Series occurs and is continuing, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such Series by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

Section 504. *Trustee May File Proofs of Claim.*

In case of any judicial proceeding relative to the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities), its property or its creditors, the Trustee shall be entitled and empowered, by

39

intervention in such proceeding or otherwise, to take any and all actions authorized under the Trust Indenture Act in order to have claims of the Holders and the Trustee allowed in any such proceeding. In particular, the Trustee shall be authorized to

- (1) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount, or such lesser amount as may be provided for in the Securities of such Series, of the principal and any premium or interest owing and unpaid in respect of such Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustee, its agents or counsel) and of the Holders of such Securities allowed in such judicial proceeding, and
- (2) collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same;

and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator, or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is authorized by each Holder of Securities to make such payments to the Trustee and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders of Securities and to pay to the Trustee any amount due it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements, and advances of the Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due the Trustee under Section 607.

No provision of this Indenture shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder of a Security any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding; provided, however, the Trustee may vote on behalf of the Holders for the election of a trustee in bankruptcy or similar official and may be a member of a creditors, or other similar committee.

Section 505. *Trustee May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities.*

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture or the Securities may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of the Securities or the production of such Securities in any related proceeding, and any such proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements, and advances of the Trustee, its agents, and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

Section 506. *Application of Money Collected.*

Any money collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article Five or, after an Event of Default, any money or other property distributable in respect of the Company's obligations under this Indenture shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal or any premium or interest, upon presentation of the Securities and the notation on such Securities of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender of such Securities if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of all amounts due the Trustee (including any predecessor

40

trustee) under Section 607; and

SECOND: To the payment of amounts then due and unpaid to the holders of Senior Indebtedness, to the extent required pursuant to the Subordinated Provisions established with respect to the Securities of such Series pursuant to Section 301(20);

THIRD: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of and any premium and interest on the Securities in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the aggregate amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal and any premium and interest, respectively; and

FOURTH: The balance, if any, to the Person or Persons entitled thereto.

Section 507. *Limitation on Suits.*

No Holder of any Security of any Series shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy under this Indenture, unless:

- (1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustee of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that Series;
- (2) the Holders of not less than 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that Series shall have made written request to the Trustee to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in its own name as Trustee under the Indenture;
- (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustee indemnity reasonably satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, expenses, and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- (4) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request, and offer of indemnity has failed to institute any such proceeding; and
- (5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustee during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that Series; it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb, or prejudice the rights of any other of such Holders, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner provided in this Indenture and for the equal and ratable benefit of all of such Holders.

Section 508. *Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest.*

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment of the principal of and

any premium and (subject to Section 305 and Section 307) any interest on such Security on the respective Stated Maturity or Maturities expressed in such Security (or, in the case of redemption, on the Redemption Date) and, in the case of any Security that is convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or property, to convert or exchange, as the case may be, such Security in accordance with its terms), and to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

Section 509. *Restoration of Rights and Remedies.*

If the Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to the Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustee and the Holders shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions under this Indenture and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustee and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

Section 510. *Rights and Remedies Cumulative.*

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost, or stolen Securities in the last paragraph of Section 306, no right or remedy conferred in this Indenture upon or reserved to the Trustee or to the Holders is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given under this Indenture or now or in the future existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or otherwise, shall not prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

Section 511. *Delay or Omission Not Waiver.*

No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any Holder of any Securities to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of or acquiescence in any such Event of Default. Every right and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Holders, as the case may be.

Section 512. *Control by Holders.*

The Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series shall have the right to direct the time, method, and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee, with respect to the Securities of such Series, provided that

(1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture or with the Securities of any Series,

42

(2) the Trustee may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustee which is not inconsistent with such direction, and

(3) the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer or Officers of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed would involve the Trustee in personal liability.

Section 513. *Waiver of Past Defaults.*

Subject to Section 502, the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such Series waive any past default under this Indenture with respect to such Series and its consequences, except a default (1) in the payment of the principal of, or any premium or interest on, any Security of such Series, or (2) in respect of a covenant or provision of this Indenture which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such affected Series.

Upon any such waiver, such default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising from such default shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any consequent right.

Section 514. *Waiver of Usury, Stay or Extension Laws.*

The Company covenants that (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law or any usury law or any other law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which would prohibit or forgive the Company from paying all or any portion of the principal of or premium, if any, or interest, if any, on any Securities as contemplated herein and therein or which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture or the Securities; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustee or the Holders, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

Section 515. *Undertaking for Costs.*

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each Holder of any Securities by his acceptance of such Securities shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken, suffered, or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorney's fees and expenses, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section 515 shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Company, to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Holder, or group of Holders, holding in the aggregate more than 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series, or to any suit instituted by any Holder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest, if any, on any Securities on or

43

after the Stated Maturity or Maturities expressed in such Securities (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date) or for the enforcement of the right, if any, to convert or exchange any Security into Common Stock or other securities in accordance with its terms).

ARTICLE SIX.

THE TRUSTEE

Section 601. *Duties of Trustee.*

(1) If an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing, the Trustee will exercise such of the rights and powers vested in it hereby, and use the same degree of care and skill in its exercise, as a prudent person would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of such person's own affairs.

(2) Except during the continuance of an Event of Default:

(a) the duties of the Trustee will be determined solely by the express provisions hereof and the Trustee need perform only those duties that are specifically set forth herein and no others, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

(b) in the absence of bad faith on its part, the Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements hereof. However, the Trustee will examine the certificates and opinions to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements hereof.

(3) Whether or not therein expressly so provided, every provision hereof that in any way relates to the Trustee is subject to paragraphs (1) and (2) of this Section 601 and to Section 602.

(4) No provision hereof will require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or incur any liability.

(5) The Trustee will not be liable for interest on any money received by it except as the Trustee may agree in writing with the Company.

Section 602. *Certain Rights of Trustee.*

(1) the Trustee may conclusively rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note or other paper or document reasonably believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

44

(2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or a Company Order (in each case, other than delivery of any Security, to the Trustee for authentication and delivery pursuant to Section 303 which shall be sufficiently evidenced as provided therein) and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;

(3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, the Trustee (unless other evidence shall be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officers' Certificate;

(4) before the Trustee acts or refrains from acting, it may require an Officers' Certificate or an Opinion of Counsel or both. The Trustee will not be liable for any action it takes or omits to take in good faith in reliance on such Officers' Certificate or Opinion of Counsel. The Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel will be full and complete authorization and protection from liability in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by it hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon. The Trustee may act through its attorneys and agents and will not be responsible for the misconduct or negligence of any agent appointed with due care.

(5) the Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by or pursuant to this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders of Securities of any Series pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustee security or indemnity satisfactory to the Trustee against the costs, expenses and liabilities that might be incurred by it in compliance with such request or direction;

(6) the Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture or other paper or document, but the Trustee, in its discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as it may see fit, and, if the Trustee shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, it shall be entitled to examine, during business hours and upon reasonable notice, the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney, at the sole cost of the Company and shall incur no liability or additional liability of any kind by reason of such inquiry or investigation;

(7) the Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder;

(8) the Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and reasonably believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;

(9) in no event shall the Trustee be responsible or liable for special, indirect or consequential loss or damage of any kind whatsoever (including, but not limited to, loss of

45

profit) irrespective of whether the Trustee has been advised of the likelihood of such loss or damage and regardless of the form of action;

(10) the Trustee shall not be required to take notice or be deemed to have notice of any Event of Default, except failure by the Company to pay or cause to be made any of the payments required to be made to the Trustee, unless a Responsible Officer shall be specifically notified by a writing of such Default by the Company or by the Holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities then outstanding delivered to the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee and in the absence of such notice so delivered the Trustee may conclusively assume no Default exists.

(11) the rights, privileges, protections, immunities and benefits given to the Trustee, including, without limitation, its right to be indemnified, are extended to, and shall be enforceable by, the Trustee in each of its capacities hereunder, and each agent, custodian and other Person employed to act hereunder; and

(12) the Trustee may request that the Company deliver a certificate setting forth the names of individuals and/or titles of officers authorized at such time to take specified actions pursuant to this Indenture.

Section 603. Notice of Defaults.

Within 90 days after the Trustee is notified of the occurrence of any default hereunder with respect to the Securities of any Series, the Trustee shall transmit by mail to all Holders of Securities of such Series entitled to receive reports pursuant to Section 703(3), notice of such default hereunder known to the Trustee, unless such default shall have been cured or waived; provided, however, that, except in the case of a default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any), or interest, if any, on, any Security of such Series, the Trustee shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of the Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the best interest of the Holders of Securities of such Series; and provided, further, that in the case of any default of the character specified in Section 501(4) or Section 501(8) with respect to Securities of such Series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 30 days after the occurrence thereof. For the purpose of this Section, the term "default" means any event that is, or after notice or lapse of time or both would become, an Event of Default with respect to Securities of such Series.

Section 604. Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except the Trustee's certificate of authentication, shall be taken as the statements of the Company and neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities, except that the Trustee represents that it is duly authorized to execute and deliver this Indenture, authenticate the Securities and perform its obligations hereunder and that the statements made by it in a Statement of Eligibility on Form T-1 supplied to the Company are true and accurate, subject to the qualifications set forth therein. Neither the Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be

accountable for the use or application by the Company of the Securities or the proceeds thereof. The Trustee will not be responsible for and makes no representation as to the validity or adequacy of this Indenture or the Securities, it shall not be accountable for the Company's use of the proceeds from the Securities or any money paid to the Company or upon the Company's direction under any provision hereof, it will not be responsible for the use or application of any money received by any Paying Agent other than the Trustee, and it will not be responsible for any statement or recital herein or any statement in the Securities or any other document in connection with the sale of the Securities or pursuant to this Indenture other than its certificate of authentication.

Section 605. *May Hold Securities.*

The Trustee, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other Person that may be an agent of the Trustee or the Company, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and, subject to Section 310(b) and Section 311 of the Trust Indenture Act, may otherwise deal with the Company with the same rights that it would have if it were not Trustee, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other Person.

Section 606. *Money Held in Trust.*

Except as provided in [Section 403](#) and [Section 1003](#), money held by the Trustee in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law and shall be held uninvested. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by it hereunder except as otherwise agreed in writing with the Company.

Section 607. *Compensation and Reimbursement.*

The Company agrees:

- (1) to pay to the Trustee from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by the Trustee hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);
- (2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to the Trustee's negligence or bad faith; and
- (3) to indemnify each of the Trustee or any predecessor Trustee and their agents for, and to hold them harmless against, any loss, liability or reasonable expense (including, without limitation, the reasonable fees and disbursements of the Trustee's agents, legal counsel, accountants and experts) and including taxes (other than taxes based upon, measured by or determined by the income of the Trustee), incurred without negligence or bad faith on their part, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including the reasonable costs and expenses of defending themselves against any claim (whether asserted by the Company, or any Holder or any other Person) or liability in

connection with the exercise or performance of any of their powers or duties hereunder, or in connection with enforcing the provisions of this Section, except to the extent that any such loss, liability or expense was due to the Trustee's negligence or bad faith.

As security for the performance of the obligations of the Company under this Section, the Trustee shall have a lien prior to the Securities of any Series upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of, or premium or interest on Securities. Such lien will survive the satisfaction and discharge hereof.

Any compensation or expense incurred by the Trustee after a default specified by [Section 501\(5\)](#) or [Section 501\(6\)](#) is intended to constitute an expense of administration under any then applicable bankruptcy or insolvency law. "Trustee" for purposes of this [Section 607](#) shall include any predecessor Trustee, but the negligence or bad faith of any Trustee shall not affect the rights of any other Trustee under this [Section 607](#). The provisions of this [Section 607](#) shall, to the extent permitted by law, survive any termination of this Indenture (including, without limitation, termination pursuant to any Bankruptcy Laws) and the resignation or removal of the Trustee.

Section 608. *Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.*

- (1) There shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder that is a corporation, organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any state thereof or the District of Columbia, eligible under Section 310(a)(1) of the Trust Indenture Act to act as trustee under an indenture qualified under the Trust Indenture Act and that has a combined capital and surplus (computed in accordance with Section 310(a)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act) of at least \$50,000,000 subject to supervision or examination by federal or state authority. If at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article.
- (2) The following indenture shall be considered specifically described herein for purposes of clause (i) of the proviso contained in Section 310(b)(1) of the Trust Indenture Act: Senior Debt Indenture dated as of [·] between the Company and U.S. Bank National Association, as trustee; and, pursuant to

Section 310(b)(1)(C)(i) of the Trust Indenture Act, unless otherwise ordered by the Commission, an event of default by the Company under this Indenture will not disqualify the Trustee under this Indenture because it is the trustee under such other indenture.

Section 609. *Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.*

- (1) No resignation or removal of the Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article Six shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee pursuant to Section 610.
- (2) The Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more Series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee required by Section 610 shall not have been delivered to the Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may, at the Company's expense, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to such Series.

48

- (3) The Trustee may be removed at any time with respect to the Securities of any Series by Act of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series, delivered to the Trustee and the Company.
- (4) If at any time:
 - (a) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the obligations imposed upon it under Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with respect to Securities of any Series after written request therefor by the Company or any Holder of a Security of such Series who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such Series for at least six months, or
 - (b) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 608 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or any such Holder, or
 - (c) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, (i) the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities or the Securities of such Series, or (ii) subject to Section 315(e) of the Trust Indenture Act, any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such Series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee with respect to all Securities of such Series and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.
- (5) If the Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more Series, the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those Series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such Series and that at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular Series) and shall comply with the applicable requirements of Section 610. If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 610, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders of Securities and accepted appointment in the manner required by Section 610, any Holder of a Security who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such Series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series.

49

- (6) The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of the Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any Series by mailing written notice of such event by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to the Holders of Securities, if any, of such Series as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such Series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.

Section 610. *Acceptance of Appointment by Successor.*

- (1) Upon the appointment hereunder of any successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties hereunder of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or such successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee, upon payment of its charges, shall execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and, subject to Section 1003, shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder, subject nevertheless to its claim, if any, provided for in Section 607.

- (2) Upon the appointment hereunder of any successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) Series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and such successor Trustee shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (i) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, such successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those Series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (ii) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those Series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (iii) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be

necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust, that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee and that no Trustee shall be responsible for any notice given to, or received by, or any act or failure to act on the part of any other Trustee hereunder, and, upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture, the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein, such retiring Trustee shall have no further responsibility for the exercise of rights and powers or for the performance of the duties and obligations vested in the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of that or those Series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates other than as hereinafter expressly set forth, and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those

Series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or such successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee, upon payment of its charges with respect to the Securities of that or those Series to which the appointment of such successor relates and subject to Section 1003 shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee, to the extent contemplated by such supplemental indenture, the property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those Series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, subject to its claim, if any, provided for in Section 607.

(3) Upon request of any Person appointed hereunder as a successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (1) or (2) of this Section, as the case may be.

(4) No Person shall accept its appointment hereunder as a successor Trustee unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Person shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.

Section 611. *Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.*

Any corporation into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder (provided that such corporation shall otherwise be qualified and eligible under this Article), without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated but not delivered by the Trustee then in office, any such successor to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities. In case any Securities shall not have been authenticated by such predecessor Trustee, any such successor Trustee may authenticate and deliver such Securities in either its own name or that of its predecessor Trustee.

Section 612. *Appointment of Authenticating Agent.*

The Trustee may appoint one or more Authenticating Agents acceptable to the Company with respect to one or more Series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of that or those Series issued upon original issue, exchange, registration of transfer, partial redemption, partial repayment, partial conversion or exchange for Common Stock or other securities or property, or pursuant to Section 306, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustee or the Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustee by an Authenticating Agent.

Each Authenticating Agent shall be reasonably acceptable to the Company and, except as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, shall at all times be a corporation that would be permitted by the Trust Indenture Act to act as trustee under an indenture qualified under the Trust Indenture Act, is authorized under applicable law and by its charter to act as an Authenticating Agent and has a combined capital and surplus (computed in accordance with Section 310(a)(2) of the Trust Indenture Act) of at least \$50,000,000. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all of the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall be the successor of such Authenticating Agent hereunder, provided such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustee or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustee and the Company. The Trustee may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent that shall be acceptable to the Company and shall mail written notice of such appointment by first-class mail, postage prepaid, to all Holders of Securities, if any, of the Series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent shall serve, as their names and addresses appear in the Security Register. Any successor Authenticating Agent, upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder, shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section 612.

The Company agrees to pay each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section. If the Trustee makes such payments, it shall be entitled to be reimbursed for such payments, subject to the provisions of Section 607.

The provisions of Section 308, Section 604 and Section 605 shall be applicable to each Authenticating Agent.

If an Authenticating Agent is appointed with respect to one or more Series of Securities pursuant to this Section, the Securities of such Series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to or in lieu of the Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternate certificate of authentication in substantially the following form:

This is one of the Securities of the Series designated herein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

52

as Trustee

By:
As Authenticating Agent

By:
Authorized Signatory

If all of the Securities of any Series may not be originally issued at one time, and if the Trustee does not have an office capable of authenticating Securities upon original issuance located in a Place of Payment where the Company desires to have Securities of such Series authenticated upon original issuance, the Trustee, if so requested in writing (which writing need not be accompanied by or contained in an Officers' Certificate of the Company), shall appoint in accordance with this Section an Authenticating Agent having an office in a Place of Payment designated by the Company with respect to such Series of Securities.

ARTICLE SEVEN.

HOLDERS LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY

Section 701. *Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Holders.*

In accordance with Section 312(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Company shall furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustee

(1) semi-annually with respect to Securities of each Series not later than and of the year or upon such other dates as are set forth in or pursuant to the Board Resolution or indenture supplemental hereto authorizing such Series, a list, in each case in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of Holders as of the applicable date, and

(2) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing, within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished,

provided, however, that so long as the Trustee is the Security Registrar no such list shall be required to be furnished.

Section 702. *Preservation of Information; Communications to Holders.*

The Trustee shall comply with the obligations imposed upon it pursuant to Section 312 of the Trust Indenture Act.

Every Holder of Securities, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustee that neither the Company, the Trustee, any Paying Agent or any Security Registrar shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any such information as to the names and addresses of the Holders of Securities in accordance with Section 312(c) of the Trust Indenture Act, regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the

53

Trustee shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

Section 703. *Reports by Trustee.*

(1) Within 60 days after July 15 of each year commencing with the first July 15 following the first issuance of Securities pursuant to Section 301, if required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee shall transmit, pursuant to Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act, a brief report dated as of such July 15 with respect to any of the events specified in said Section 313(a) and Section 313(b)(2) that may have occurred since the later of the immediately preceding July 15 and the date of this Indenture.

(2) The Trustee shall transmit the reports required by Section 313(a) of the Trust Indenture Act at the times specified therein.

(3) Reports pursuant to this Section shall be transmitted in the manner and to the Persons required by Section 313(c) and Section 313(d) of the Trust Indenture Act.

Section 704. *Reports by Company.*

(1) The Company, pursuant to Section 314(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, shall:

(a) file with the Trustee, within 15 days after the Company files the same with the Commission, copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may from time to time by

rules and regulations prescribe) that the Company may be required to file with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; or, if the Company is not required to file information, documents or reports pursuant to either of said Sections, then it shall file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such of the supplementary and periodic information, documents and reports that may be required pursuant to Section 13 of the Exchange Act in respect of a security listed and registered on a national securities exchange as may be prescribed from time to time in such rules and regulations;

- (b) file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such additional certificates, information, documents and reports with respect to compliance by the Company, with the conditions and covenants of this Indenture as may be required from time to time by such rules and regulations; and
- (c) transmit within 30 days after the filing thereof with the Trustee, in the manner and to the extent provided in Section 313(c) of the Trust Indenture Act, such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed by the Company pursuant to paragraphs (1) and (2) of this Section as may be required by rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission. Delivery of such reports, information and documents to the Trustee is for informational

54

purposes only and the Trustee's receipt of such shall not constitute constructive notice of any information contained therein or determinable from information contained therein, including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder (as to which the Trustee is entitled to rely exclusively on Officers' Certificates).

(2) The Company intends to file the reports referred to in Section 704(1) with the Commission in electronic form pursuant to Regulation S-T of the Commission using the Commission's Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval system. Compliance with the foregoing, or any successor electronic system approved by the Commission, shall constitute delivery by the Company of such reports to the Trustee and Holders in compliance with the provision of Section 704(1) and TIA Section 314(a). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, the Trustee shall have no duty to search for or obtain any electronic or other filings that the Company makes with the Commission, regardless of whether such filings are periodic, supplemental or otherwise. Delivery of the reports, information and documents to the Trustee pursuant to this Section 704(2) shall be solely for the purposes of compliance with this Section 704(2) and with TIA Section 314(a). The Trustee's receipt of such reports, information and documents shall not constitute notice to it of the content thereof or of any matter determinable from the content thereof (and the Trustee shall not have any duty to ascertain or inquire as to such content or matter), including the Company's compliance with any of its covenants hereunder, as to which the Trustee is conclusively entitled to rely upon Officers' Certificates.

ARTICLE EIGHT.

CONSOLIDATION, MERGER AND SALES

Section 801. *Company May Consolidate, Etc., Only on Certain Terms.*

The Company shall not, in any transaction or series of related transactions, consolidate with or merge into any Person or sell, assign, transfer, lease or otherwise convey all or substantially all its properties and assets to any Person, unless:

(1) either (A) the Company shall be the continuing Person (in the case of a merger), or (B) the successor Person (if other than the Company) formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or which acquires by sale, assignment, transfer, lease or other conveyance all or substantially all the properties and assets of the Company shall be a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America, any state thereof or the District of Columbia and shall expressly assume, by an indenture (or indentures, if at such time there is more than one Trustee) supplemental hereto, executed by such successor corporation and delivered to the Trustee, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, the due and punctual payment of the principal of, any premium and interest on, all the Outstanding Securities and the due and punctual performance and observance of every obligation in this Indenture and the Outstanding Securities on the part of the Company to be performed or observed, and which supplemental indenture shall provide for conversion or exchange rights in accordance with the provisions of the Securities of any Series that are convertible or exchangeable into Common Stock or other securities;

55

(2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction and treating any indebtedness that becomes an obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary as a result of that transaction as having been incurred by the Company or any Subsidiary at the time of the transaction, no Event of Default, and no event which, after notice or lapse of time, or both, would become an Event of Default, shall have occurred and be continuing; and

(3) either the Company or the successor Person shall have delivered to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such consolidation, merger, sale, assignment, transfer, lease or other conveyance and, if a supplemental indenture is required in connection with such transaction, such supplemental indenture comply with this Article Eight and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

For purposes of the foregoing, any sale, assignment, transfer, lease or other conveyance of all or any of the properties and assets of one or more Subsidiaries of the Company (other than to the Company or another Subsidiary), which, if such properties and assets were owned by the Company, would constitute all or substantially all of the Company's properties and assets, shall be deemed to be the transfer of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company.

Section 802. *Successor Person Substituted for Company.*

Upon any consolidation by the Company with or merger of the Company into any other Person or any sale, assignment, transfer, lease or conveyance of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company to any Person in accordance with Section 801, the successor Person formed by such consolidation or into which the Company is merged or to which such sale, assignment, transfer, lease or other conveyance is made shall succeed to, and be

substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein; and thereafter, except in the case of a lease, the predecessor Person shall be released from all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.

ARTICLE NINE.

SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

Section 901. *Supplemental Indentures without Consent of Holders.*

Without the consent of any Holders of Securities, the Company (when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution) and the Trustee, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form satisfactory to the Trustee, for any of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company, and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company contained herein and in the Securities; or
- (2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any Series of Securities (as shall be specified in such supplemental indenture or indentures) or to

56

surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company with respect to all or any Series of Securities issued under this Indenture (as shall be specified in such supplemental indenture or indentures); or

- (3) to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities of a Series in uncertificated or global form, provided any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any Series; or
- (4) to establish any Series of Securities and the form or terms of Securities of any Series as permitted by Section 201 and Section 301, including, without limitation, any Subordination Provisions and any conversion or exchange provisions applicable to Securities that are convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or property, and any deletions from or additions or changes to this Indenture in connection therewith (provided that any such deletions, additions and changes shall not be applicable to any other Series of Securities then Outstanding); or
- (5) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more Series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 610; or
- (6) (a) to cure any ambiguity or to correct or supplement any provision herein that may be defective or that may be inconsistent with any other provision herein or (b) to make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture that shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any Series then Outstanding in any material respect; or
- (7) to add any additional Events of Default with respect to all or any Series of Securities (as shall be specified in such supplemental indenture); or
- (8) to supplement any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the defeasance, covenant defeasance and/or satisfaction and discharge of any Series of Securities pursuant to Article Four, provided that any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of any Holder of a Security of such Series or any other Security in any material respect; or
- (9) to make provisions with respect to conversion or exchange rights of Holders of Securities of any Series; or
- (10) to amend, supplement or eliminate any provision contained herein or in any supplemental indenture or in any Securities (which amendment or supplement may apply to one or more Series of Securities or to one or more Securities within any Series as specified in such supplemental indenture or indentures), provided that such amendment, supplement or elimination does not apply to any Outstanding Security issued prior to the date of such supplemental indenture and entitled to the benefits of such provision; or

57

(11) in the case of any Series of Securities which are convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock or other securities or property, to safeguard or provide for the conversion or exchange rights, as the case may be, of such Securities in the event of any reclassification or change of outstanding shares of Common Stock or any merger, consolidation, statutory share exchange or combination of the Company with or into another Person or any sale, lease, assignment, transfer, disposition or other conveyance of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company to any other Person or other similar transactions, if expressly required by the terms of such Series of Securities established pursuant to Section 301; or

- (12) to add to, delete from or revise the conditions, limitations or restrictions on issue, authentication and delivery of Securities of any Series; or
- (13) to conform any provision in this Indenture to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act; or
- (14) to make any change that does not adversely affect the legal rights under this Indenture of any Holder of Securities of any Series issued under this Indenture.

Section 902. *Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders.*

With the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of each Series affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustee, the Company (when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution), and the Trustee may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of the Securities of such Series or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such Series under this Indenture; provided, that no such supplemental indenture, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby, shall

(1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, or premium, if any, or any installment of interest, if any, on, any Security, or reduce the principal amount thereof or the premium, if any, thereon or the rate (or modify the calculation of such rate) of interest thereon, or reduce the amount payable upon redemption thereof at the option of the Company or repayment thereof at the option of the Holder, or reduce the amount of the principal of any Original Issue Discount Security that would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to [Section 502](#) or the amount thereof provable in bankruptcy pursuant to [Section 504](#), or extend the time of payment of interest on any Security, or change any of the conversion, exchange or redemption provisions of any Security or change the Place of Payment where the principal of, any premium or interest on, any Security is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption, on or after the Redemption Date), in each case as such Stated Maturity, Redemption Date or date for repayment may, if applicable, be extended in accordance with the terms of such Security, or in the case of any Security that is convertible into or exchangeable for other securities or property, impair the right to institute suit to enforce the right to convert or exchange such Security in accordance with its terms or modify the ranking or priority of the Securities in a manner adverse to the Holders of the Securities, or

58

(2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series, the consent of whose Holders is required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver (of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture or certain defaults hereunder and their consequences) provided for in [Section 513](#) or [Section 1006](#) of this Indenture, or reduce the requirements of [Section 1404](#) for quorum or voting, or

(3) modify any of the provisions of this [Section 902](#), [Section 513](#) or [Section 1006](#), except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security affected thereby.

A supplemental indenture that changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which shall have been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular Series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such Series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other Series.

Anything in this Indenture to the contrary notwithstanding, if more than one Series of Securities is Outstanding, the Company shall be entitled to enter into a supplemental indenture under this [Section 902](#) with respect to any one or more Series of Outstanding Securities without entering into a supplemental indenture with respect to any other Series of Outstanding Securities.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders of Securities under this [Section 902](#) to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

Section 903. *Execution of Supplemental Indentures.*

As a condition to executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this [Article Nine](#) or the modifications thereby of the trust created by this Indenture, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 315(a) through Section 315(d) of the Trust Indenture Act) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Officers' Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel to the effect that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture and that such supplemental indenture has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by, and is a valid, binding and enforceable obligation of, the Company, subject to customary exceptions. The Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Section 904. *Effect of Supplemental Indentures.*

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this [Article Nine](#), this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of a Security theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder.

59

Section 905. *Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures.*

Securities of any Series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this [Article Nine](#) may, and shall if required by the Trustee, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustee as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any Series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustee and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustee in exchange for Outstanding Securities of such Series.

Section 906. *Effect on Senior Indebtedness.*

No supplemental indenture shall directly or indirectly modify or eliminate the Subordination Provisions or the definition of "Senior Indebtedness" applicable with respect to the Securities of any Series in any manner that might terminate or impair the subordination of such Series of Securities to such Senior Indebtedness without the prior written consent of the Holders of such Senior Indebtedness.

Section 907. *Conformity with Trust Indenture Act.*

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article shall conform to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect.

ARTICLE TEN.

COVENANTS

Section 1001. *Payment of Principal, Premium, Interest.*

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of the Securities of each Series that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of, any premium and interest on the Securities of such Series, whether payable in cash, shares of Common Stock or other securities or property, in accordance with the terms thereof and this Indenture.

Section 1002. *Maintenance of Office or Agency.*

The Company shall maintain in each Place of Payment for any Series of Securities an Office or Agency where Securities of such Series may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities of such Series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, where Securities of such Series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of such Series relating thereto and this Indenture may be served, provided that, if (i) the City of Dallas, Texas, is a Place of Payment for the Securities of any Series, (ii) there shall be another Place of Payment in the United States of America for such Securities in addition to the City of Dallas, Texas, and (iii) all Securities of such Series are originally issued solely in the form of one or more permanent global Securities, then the Company shall not be required to maintain any such office or agency in the City of Dallas, Texas, unless and until all or any portion of such global Securities shall be exchanged for or otherwise issued as definitive certificated Securities of such Series as contemplated by the last paragraph of this [Section 1002](#). The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustee of the location, and any change in

60

the location, of such Office or Agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required Office or Agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other Offices or Agencies where the Securities of one or more Series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind such designations; provided, however, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an Office or Agency in each Place of Payment for Securities of any Series for such purposes. The Company shall give prompt written notice to the Trustee of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other Office or Agency.

Unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, the Company hereby designates the City of Dallas, Texas, as a Place of Payment for each Series of Securities, initially appoints the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee in the City of Dallas, Texas, as the Company's Office or Agency in the City of Dallas, Texas, for such purpose and initially appoints the Trustee as the Security Registrar for each Series of Securities and, if the Securities of any Series are convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock or other securities or property, initially appoints the Trustee as conversion or exchange agent, as the case may be, for the Securities of such Series. The Company may subsequently appoint a different Office or Agency in the City of Dallas, Texas or the Borough of Manhattan, the City of New York, and, as provided in [Section 305](#), may remove and replace from time to time the Security Registrar.

As set forth above in this [Section 1002](#), and unless otherwise provided pursuant to [Section 301](#) with respect to any Series of Securities, in the event that the Securities of a Series are originally issued solely in the form of one or more permanent global Securities and if at any time thereafter Securities of such Series are issued in definitive certificated form in exchange for all or any portion of such global Securities (whether pursuant to [Section 305](#) or otherwise pursuant to the terms of such Securities), the Company shall, at all times from and after the date of the first such exchange until such time as no Securities of such Series in definitive certificated form are Outstanding, establish and maintain an Office or Agency in the City of Dallas, Texas (in addition to any other Offices or Agencies the Company is required to maintain in respect of such Securities) where Securities of such Series may be surrendered and where notices and demands in respect of Securities of such Series and this Indenture may be served for the purposes specified in, and as contemplated by, the first paragraph of this [Section 1002](#).

Section 1003. *Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust.*

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any Series of Securities, it shall, on or before each due date of the principal of, any premium or interest on any of the Securities of such Series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum in Dollars sufficient to pay the principal, any premium and interest, as the case may be, so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided, and shall promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

61

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any Series of Securities, it shall, on or prior to each due date of the principal of, or any premium or interest on, any Securities of such Series, deposit with any Paying Agent a sum in Dollars sufficient to pay the principal, premium and interest, as the case may be, so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto, and (unless such Paying Agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of its action or failure so to act.

The Company shall cause each Paying Agent for any Series of Securities other than the Trustee to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section, that such Paying Agent shall:

(1) hold all sums held by it for the payment of the principal of, any premium or interest on the Securities of such Series in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as provided in or pursuant to this Indenture;

(2) give the Trustee notice of any default by the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities of such Series) in the making of any payment of principal, any premium or interest on the Securities of such Series; and

(3) at any time during the continuance of any such default, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such Paying Agent.

To the extent that the terms of any Securities established pursuant to Section 301 provide that any principal of, or premium or interest, if any, on any such Securities is or may be payable in Common Stock or other securities or property, then the provisions of this Section 1003 shall apply, mutatis mutandis, to such Common Stock or other securities or property.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same terms as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustee, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such sums.

Except as otherwise provided herein or pursuant hereto, any money deposited with the Trustee or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of, any premium or interest on any Security of any Series and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal or such premium or interest shall have become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustee or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may, not later than 30 days after the Company's request for such repayment, at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in an Authorized Newspaper in each Place of Payment for such Series or to be mailed to Holders of

Securities of such Series, or both, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication or mailing nor shall it be earlier than two years after such principal and any premium or interest shall have become due and payable, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

Section 1004. *Corporate Existence.*

Subject to Article Eight, the Company shall do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect (i) the corporate existence of the Company, (ii) the existence (corporate or other) of each Significant Subsidiary of the Company and (iii) the rights (charter and statutory), licenses and franchises of the Company and each of its Significant Subsidiaries; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to preserve the existence (corporate or other) of any of its Significant Subsidiaries or any such right, license or franchise of the Company or any of its Significant Subsidiaries if the Board of Directors of the Company determines that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company and its Significant Subsidiaries taken as a whole and that the loss thereof will not be disadvantageous in any material respect to the Holders.

Section 1005. *Maintenance of Properties.*

The Company will, and will cause each Significant Subsidiary to, cause all its properties used or useful in the conduct of its business to be maintained and kept in good condition, repair and working order and supplied with all necessary equipment and will cause to be made all necessary repairs, renewals, replacements, betterments and improvements thereof, all as in the judgment of the Company may be necessary so that the business carried on in connection therewith may be properly and advantageously conducted at all times; provided, however, that nothing in this Section shall prevent the Company or any Significant Subsidiary from discontinuing the operation and maintenance of any of their respective properties if such discontinuance is, in the judgment of the Board of Directors of the Company or of any Significant Subsidiary, as the case may be, desirable in the conduct of its business.

Section 1006. *Waiver of Certain Covenants.*

The Company may omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition set forth in Section 1002 to Section 1005, inclusive, with respect to the Securities of any Series and, if expressly provided pursuant to Section 301(13), any additional covenants applicable to the Securities of such Series if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series, by Act of such Holders, either shall waive such compliance in such instance or generally shall have waived compliance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustee in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

Section 1007. *Company Statement as to Compliance.*

The Company shall deliver to the Trustee, within 180 days after the end of each fiscal

year, a written statement (which need not be contained in or accompanied by an Officers' Certificate) signed by the principal executive officer, the principal financial officer or the principal accounting officer of the Company, stating whether or not, to the best of his or her knowledge, the Company is in default in the performance and observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions of this Indenture (without regard to notice requirements or periods of grace) and if the Company shall be in default, specifying all such defaults and the nature and status thereof of which he or she may have knowledge.

Section 1101. *Applicability of Article.*

Redemption of Securities of any Series at the option of the Company as permitted or required by the terms of such Securities shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise provided herein or pursuant hereto) this Article.

Section 1102. *Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustee.*

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by or pursuant to a Board Resolution. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company of less than all of the Securities of any Series, the Company shall, at least 60 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustee), notify the Trustee of such Redemption Date and of the principal amount of Securities of such Series to be redeemed and, in the event that the Company shall determine that the Securities of any Series to be redeemed shall be selected from Securities of such Series having the same issue date, interest rate or interest rate formula, Stated Maturity and other terms (the "Equivalent Terms"), the Company shall notify the Trustee of such Equivalent Terms.

In the case of any redemption of Securities (A) prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture or (B) pursuant to an election of the Company that is subject to a condition specified in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction or condition.

Section 1103. *Selection by Trustee of Securities to be Redeemed.*

If less than all of the Securities of any Series are to be redeemed or if less than all of the Securities of any Series with Equivalent Terms are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustee from the Outstanding Securities of such Series or from the Outstanding Securities of such Series with Equivalent Terms, as the case may be, not previously called for redemption unless otherwise required by law, by lot or such method as the Trustee shall deem fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of portions of the principal amount of Securities of such Series; provided, however, that no such partial redemption shall reduce the portion of the principal amount of a Security of such Series not redeemed to less than the minimum denomination for a Security of such Series established herein or pursuant hereto.

64

The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company and the Security Registrar (if other than itself) in writing of the Securities selected for redemption and, in the case of any Securities selected for partial redemption, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Securities redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal of such Securities which has been or is to be redeemed.

Unless otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities of any Series, if any Security selected for partial redemption is converted or exchanged for Common Stock or other securities or property in part before termination of the conversion or exchange right with respect to the portion of the Security so selected, the converted or exchanged portion of such Security shall be deemed (so far as may be) to be the portion selected for redemption. Securities which have been converted or exchanged during a selection of Securities to be redeemed shall be treated by the Trustee as Outstanding for the purpose of such selection.

Section 1104. *Notice of Redemption.*

Notice of redemption shall be given in the manner provided in Section 106, not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, unless a shorter period is specified in the Securities to be redeemed, to the Holders of Securities to be redeemed. Failure to give notice by mailing in the manner herein provided to the Holder of any Securities designated for redemption as a whole or in part, or any defect in the notice to any such Holder, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities or portions thereof.

Any notice that is mailed to the Holder of any Securities in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not such Holder receives the notice.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date,
- (2) the Redemption Price,
- (3) if less than all Outstanding Securities of any Series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the principal amount) of the particular Security or Securities to be redeemed,
- (4) that, in case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, on and after the Redemption Date, upon surrender of such Security, the Holder of such Security will receive, without charge, a new Security or Securities of authorized denominations for the principal amount thereof remaining unredeemed,
- (5) that, on the Redemption Date, the Redemption Price shall become due and payable upon each such Security or portion thereof to be redeemed, together (if applicable) with accrued and unpaid interest, if any, thereon (subject, if applicable, to the provisos to the first

65

paragraph of Section 1106), and, if applicable, that interest thereon shall cease to accrue on and after said date,

- (6) the place or places where such Securities are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price and any accrued interest pertaining thereto,
- (7) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case,
- (8) in the case of Securities of any Series that are convertible or exchangeable into Common Stock or other securities or property, the then current conversion or exchange price or rate, the date or dates on which the right to convert or exchange the principal of the Securities of such Series to be redeemed will commence or terminate, as applicable, and the place or places where and the Persons to whom such Securities may be surrendered for conversion or exchange,
- (9) the CUSIP number reference numbers of such Securities, if any (or any other numbers used by a Depository to identify such Securities), and
- (10) if the Redemption Price or any portion thereof shall be payable, at the option of the Company or any Holders, in cash or in Common Stock or other securities or property (or a combination thereof), a statement as to whether the Company has elected to pay the Redemption Price in cash or Common Stock or other securities or property or a combination thereof and, if applicable, the portion of the Redemption Price that is to be paid in cash, Common Stock or other securities or property.

A notice of redemption published as contemplated by Section 106 need not identify particular Securities to be redeemed.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request delivered at least 10 days before the date such notice is to be given (unless a shorter period shall be acceptable to the Trustee), by the Trustee in the name and at the expense of the Company.

Section 1105. Deposit of Redemption Price.

On or prior to noon (local time in the City of Dallas, Texas) on any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit, with respect to the Securities of any Series called for redemption pursuant to Section 1104, with the Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 1003) an amount of money in Dollars sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and (except if the Redemption Date shall be an Interest Payment Date, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 301 for or in the Securities of such Series) any accrued interest on, all such Securities or portions thereof which are to be redeemed on that date, except that, if the Securities of such Series are convertible or exchangeable into Common Stock or other securities or property, no such deposit shall be required with respect to any such Securities (or portions thereof) which have been converted or exchanged prior to such Redemption Date.

66

Section 1106. Securities Payable on Redemption Date.

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed (except, in the case of Securities which are convertible or exchangeable into Common Stock or other securities or property, any such Securities which shall have been so converted or exchanged prior to the applicable Redemption Date) shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified, together with (unless otherwise provided with respect to the Securities of such Series pursuant to Section 301) accrued and unpaid interest, if any, thereon and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest, if any) such Securities shall cease to bear interest. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with, unless otherwise provided in or pursuant to this Indenture, any accrued and unpaid interest thereon to but excluding the Redemption Date; provided, however, that, except as otherwise specified in or pursuant to this Indenture or the Securities of such Series, installments of interest on Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the Regular Record Dates therefor according to their terms and the provisions of Section 307.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal and any premium, until paid, shall bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate prescribed therefor in the Security or, if no rate is prescribed therefor in the Security, at the rate of interest, if any, borne by such Security.

Section 1107. Securities Redeemed in Part.

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part shall be surrendered at any Office or Agency for such Security (with, if the Company or the Trustee so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustee duly executed by, the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing) and the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same Series, containing identical terms and provisions, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered. If a Security in global form is so surrendered, the Company shall execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Depository for such Security in global form as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto to the Trustee, without service charge, a new Security in global form in a denomination equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security in global form so surrendered.

ARTICLE TWELVE.

SINKING FUNDS

Section 1201. Applicability of Article.

The provisions of this Article Twelve shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a Series that by its terms provides for such a sinking fund, except as

67

otherwise permitted or required in or pursuant to this Indenture or any Security of such Series issued pursuant to this Indenture.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any Series is herein referred to as a “mandatory sinking fund payment,” and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of such Series is herein referred to as an “optional sinking fund payment.” If provided for by the terms of Securities of any Series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 1202. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any Series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such Series and this Indenture.

Section 1202. *Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.*

The Company may, in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of any Series to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities (1) deliver Outstanding Securities of such Series (other than any of such Securities previously called for redemption or any of such Securities in respect of which cash shall have been released to the Company) and (2) apply as a credit Securities of such Series that have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Series of Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the Redemption Price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly. If as a result of the delivery or credit of Securities of any Series in lieu of cash payments pursuant to this Section 1202, the principal amount of Securities of such Series to be redeemed in order to exhaust the aforesaid cash payment shall be less than \$100,000, the Trustee need not call Securities of such Series for redemption, except upon Company Request, and such cash payment shall be held by the Trustee or a Paying Agent and applied to the next succeeding sinking fund payment, provided, however, that the Trustee or such Paying Agent shall at the request of the Company from time to time pay over and deliver to the Company any cash payment so being held by the Trustee or such Paying Agent upon delivery by the Company to the Trustee of Securities of that Series purchased by the Company having an unpaid principal amount equal to the cash payment requested to be released to the Company.

Section 1203. *Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.*

Not less than 75 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any Series of Securities, the Company shall deliver to the Trustee an Officers’ Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment for that Series pursuant to the terms of that Series, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting of Securities of that Series pursuant to Section 1202, and the optional amount, if any, to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, and will also deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so credited and not theretofore delivered. If such Officers’ Certificate shall specify an optional amount to be added in cash to the next ensuing mandatory sinking fund payment, the Company

shall thereupon be obligated to pay the amount therein specified. Not less than 60 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 1103 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 1104. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Section 1106 and Section 1107.

ARTICLE THIRTEEN.

[RESERVED]

ARTICLE FOURTEEN.

MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES

Section 1401. *Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called.*

A meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series may be called at any time and from time to time pursuant to this Article to make, give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act provided by this Indenture to be made, given or taken by Holders of Securities of such Series.

Section 1402. *Call, Notice and Place of Meetings.*

(1) The Trustee may at any time call a meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series for any purpose specified in Section 1401, to be held at such time and at such place in the County of Dallas, the City of Dallas, Texas. Notice of every meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series, setting forth the time and the place of such meeting and in general terms the action proposed to be taken at such meeting, shall be given, in the manner provided in Section 106, not less than 21 nor more than 180 days prior to the date fixed for the meeting.

(2) In case at any time the Company (by or pursuant to a Board Resolution) or the Holders of at least 10% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any Series shall have requested the Trustee to call a meeting of the Holders of Securities of such Series for any purpose specified in Section 1401, by written request setting forth in reasonable detail the action proposed to be taken at the meeting, and the Trustee shall not have mailed notice of or made the first publication of the notice of such meeting within 21 days after receipt of such request (whichever shall be required pursuant to Section 106) or shall not thereafter proceed to cause the meeting to be held as provided herein, then the Company or the Holders of Securities of such Series in the amount above specified, as the case may be, may determine the time and the place in the County of Dallas, the City of Dallas, Texas, for such meeting and may call such meeting for such purposes by giving notice thereof as provided in clause (1) of this Section.

Section 1403. *Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings.*

To be entitled to vote at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series, a Person shall be (1) a Holder of one or more Outstanding Securities of such Series, or (2) a Person appointed by an instrument in writing as proxy for a Holder or Holders of one or more Outstanding

Securities of such Series by such Holder or Holders. The only Persons who shall be entitled to be present or to speak at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series shall be the Persons entitled to vote at such meeting and their counsel, any representatives of the Trustee and its counsel and any representatives of the Company and its counsel.

Section 1404. *Quorum; Action.*

The Persons entitled to vote a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a Series shall constitute a quorum for a meeting or duly reconvened meeting of Holders of Securities of such Series; provided, however, that if any action is to be taken at such meeting with respect to a consent or waiver which this Indenture expressly provides may be given by the Holders of at least 66-2/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a Series, the Persons entitled to vote 66-2/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series shall constitute a quorum. In the absence of a quorum within 30 minutes after the time appointed for any such meeting, the meeting shall, if convened at the request of Holders of Securities of such Series, be dissolved. In any other case the meeting may be adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such meeting. In the absence of a quorum at any such adjourned meeting, such adjourned meeting may be further adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such adjourned meeting. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall be given as provided in [Section 1402\(1\)](#), except that such notice need be given only once not less than five days prior to the date on which the meeting is scheduled to be reconvened. Notice of the reconvening of an adjourned meeting shall state expressly the percentage, as provided above, of the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series which shall constitute a quorum.

Except as limited by the proviso to [Section 902](#), any resolution presented to a meeting or adjourned meeting duly reconvened at which a quorum is present as aforesaid may be adopted only by the affirmative vote of the Holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series; provided, however, that, except as limited by the proviso to [Section 902](#), any resolution with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act which this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of at least 66-2/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a Series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly convened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid only by the affirmative vote of the Holders of at least 66-2/3% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that Series; and provided, further, that, except as limited by the proviso to [Section 902](#), any resolution with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act that this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage, which is less than a majority, in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a Series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly reconvened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid by the affirmative vote of the Holders of such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series.

Any resolution passed or decision taken at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series duly held in accordance with this Section shall be binding on all the Holders of Securities

of such Series, whether or not such Holders were present or represented at the meeting.

Section 1405. *Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings.*

(1) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Indenture, the Trustee may make such reasonable regulations as it may deem advisable for any meeting of Holders of Securities of such Series in regard to proof of the holding of Securities of such Series and of the appointment of proxies and in regard to the appointment and duties of inspectors of votes, the submission and examination of proxies, certificates and other evidence of the right to vote, and such other matters concerning the conduct of the meeting as it shall deem appropriate. Except as otherwise permitted or required by any such regulations, the holding of Securities shall be proved in the manner specified in [Section 104](#) and the appointment of any proxy shall be proved in the manner specified in [Section 104](#). Such regulations may provide that written instruments appointing proxies, regular on their face, may be presumed valid and genuine without the proof specified in [Section 104](#) or other proof.

(2) The Trustee shall, by an instrument in writing, appoint a temporary chairman of the meeting, unless the meeting shall have been called by the Company or by Holders of Securities as provided in [Section 1402\(2\)](#), in which case the Company or the Holders of Securities of the Series calling the meeting, as the case may be, shall in like manner appoint a temporary chairman. A permanent chairman and a permanent secretary of the meeting shall be elected by vote of the Persons entitled to vote a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series represented at the meeting.

(3) At any meeting, each Holder of a Security of such Series or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$1,000 principal amount of Securities of such Series held or represented by him; provided, however, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security challenged as not Outstanding and ruled by the chairman of the meeting to be not Outstanding. If the Securities of such Series are issuable in minimum denominations of less than \$1,000, then a Holder of such a Security in a principal amount of less than \$1,000 shall be entitled to a fraction of one vote that is equal to the fraction that the principal amount of such Security bears to \$1,000. The chairman of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a Holder of a Security of such Series or proxy.

(4) Any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series duly called pursuant to [Section 1402](#) at which a quorum is present may be adjourned from time to time by Persons entitled to vote a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such Series represented at the meeting; and the meeting may be held as so adjourned without further notice.

Section 1406. *Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings.*

The vote upon any resolution submitted to any meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series shall be by written ballots on which shall be subscribed the signatures of the Holders of Securities of such Series or of their representatives by proxy and the principal amounts and serial numbers of the Outstanding Securities of such Series held or represented by them. The permanent chairman of the meeting shall appoint two inspectors of votes who shall count all

votes cast at the meeting for or against any resolution and who shall make and file with the secretary of the meeting their verified written reports in triplicate of all votes cast at the meeting. A record, at least in triplicate, of the proceedings of each meeting of Holders of Securities of any Series shall be prepared by the secretary of the meeting and there shall be attached to said record the original reports of the inspectors of votes on any vote by ballot taken thereat and affidavits by one or more persons having knowledge of the facts setting forth a copy of the notice of the meeting and showing that said notice was given as provided in Section 1402 and, if applicable, Section 1404. Each copy shall be signed and verified by the affidavits of the permanent chairman and secretary of the meeting and one such copy shall be delivered to the Company, and another to the Trustee to be preserved by the Trustee, the latter to have attached thereto the ballots voted at the meeting. Any record so signed and verified shall be conclusive evidence of the matters therein stated.

ARTICLE FIFTEEN.

SUBORDINATION OF SECURITIES

Section 1501. *Agreement to Subordinate.*

The Company, for itself, its successors and assigns, covenants and agrees, and each Holder of Securities of any Series by his acceptance thereof, likewise covenants and agrees, that:

(1) the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest, if any (including amounts payable on redemption or repurchase), on, each and all of the Securities of such Series shall be expressly subordinated, to the extent and in the manner provided in the Subordination Provisions established with respect to the Securities of such Series pursuant to Section 301(20), hereof, in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all Senior Indebtedness (as defined for purposes of such Series); and

(2) in the event of the insolvency, bankruptcy, receivership, liquidation or other marshalling of the assets and liabilities of the Company, the holders of Senior Indebtedness (as defined for purposes of a Series of Securities) will be entitled to receive payment in full of all of the principal of, and premium, if any, and accrued and unpaid interest on, such Senior Indebtedness then outstanding before any Holder of Securities of such Series receives any payment of the principal amount of, or the premium, if any, or interest on, such Securities of such Series.

(Signature page follows)

This instrument may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed all as of the day and year first above written.

VERITEX HOLDINGS, INC.

By:
Name:
Title:

**U.S. BANK NATIONAL
ASSOCIATION, as Trustee**

By:
Name:
Title:



Texas	Bracewell & Giuliani LLP
New York	711 Louisiana Street
Washington, DC	Suite 2300
Connecticut	Houston, Texas
Seattle	77002-2770
Dubai	+1.713.223.2300 Office
London	+1.800.404.3970 Fax
	www.bgllp.com

November 10, 2015

Veritex Holdings, Inc.
8214 Westchester Drive, Suite 400
Dallas, Texas 75225

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as special counsel to Veritex Holdings, Inc., a Texas corporation (the “Company”), in connection with the Company’s Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the “Registration Statement”) to be filed on the date hereof by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “Commission”) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Act”), relating to the offering of securities that may be issued and sold by the Company from time to time pursuant to Rule 415 under the Act. Such securities include (a) shares of the Company’s common stock, par value \$0.01 per share (the “Common Stock”); (b) the Company’s unsecured senior debt securities (the “Senior Debt Securities”); (c) the Company’s unsecured subordinated debt securities (the “Subordinated Debt Securities” and, together with the Senior Debt Securities, the “Debt Securities”); (d) shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.01 per share, of the Company (“Preferred Stock”); (e) warrants to purchase other securities (“Warrants”); and (f) units consisting of Senior Debt Securities, Subordinated Debt Securities, Common Stock, Preferred Stock and/or Warrants (the “Units”). The Debt Securities, Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Warrants and Units are collectively referred to herein as the “Securities.” At your request, this opinion is being furnished to you for filing as Exhibit 5.1 to the Registration Statement.

We have examined originals or copies certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction of (i) the Registration Statement and the form of prospectus contained therein, (ii) the Company’s Restated Certificate of Formation and Third Amended and Restated Bylaws (the “Charter Documents”), (iii) the forms of the indentures (the “Indentures”) to be filed as exhibits to the Registration Statement pursuant to which the Senior Debt Securities and the Subordinated Debt Securities will be issued, (iv) certain resolutions of the Board of Directors, or committees thereof, of the Company, and (v) such other instruments, documents and records as we have deemed necessary and relevant for the purposes hereof. With your approval, we have relied upon certificates of officers of the Company and of public officials as to certain matters of fact relating to this opinion and have made such investigations of law as we have deemed necessary and relevant as a basis hereof. In such examinations, we have assumed the legal capacity of all

natural persons, the genuineness of all signatures, the authenticity of all documents, certificates and records submitted to us as originals, the conformity to authentic original documents, certificates and records of all documents, certificates and records submitted to us as copies, and the truthfulness of all statements of fact contained therein. In making our examination of executed documents or documents to be executed, we have assumed that they constitute or will constitute valid, binding and enforceable obligations of all parties thereto other than the Company.

In connection with this opinion, we have assumed that:

- (a) the Registration Statement and any amendments thereto (including post-effective amendments) will have become effective under the Act and such effectiveness shall not have been terminated or rescinded;
- (b) a prospectus supplement describing the Securities offered thereby will have been prepared and filed with the Commission in compliance with the Act and the Commission’s rules and regulations thereunder;
- (c) all Securities will be offered, issued and sold in compliance with applicable securities laws and in the manner stated in the Registration Statement and the applicable prospectus supplement;
- (d) the Board of Directors of the Company or, to the extent permitted by the Texas Business Organizations Code and the Charter Documents of the Company, a duly constituted and acting committee thereof (such Board or committee thereof being hereinafter referred to as the “Board”), will have taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the issuance of the Securities and any other Securities issuable on the conversion, exchange, redemption or exercise thereof, and to authorize the terms of the offering and sale of such Securities and related matters;
- (e) a definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement with respect to any Securities offered will have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and the other parties thereto (the “Purchase Agreement”);
- (f) any securities issuable upon conversion, exchange, redemption or exercise of any Securities being offered will have been duly authorized, created and, if appropriate, reserved for issuance upon such conversion, exchange, redemption or exercise;
- (g) all Securities, and any certificates in respect thereof, will be delivered either (i) in accordance with the provisions of the applicable Purchase Agreement approved by the Board upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein or (ii) upon conversion, exchange, redemption or exercise of any other Security, in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion, exchange, redemption or exercise as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board;

(h) in the case of shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, certificates representing such shares will have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered, or if uncertificated, valid book-entry notations will have been made in the share register of the Company, in each case in accordance with the provisions of the Charter Documents of the

2

Company; there will be sufficient shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock authorized under such Charter Documents and not otherwise issued or reserved for issuance; and the purchase price therefor payable to the Company or, if such shares are issuable on the conversion, exchange, redemption or exercise of another Security, the consideration payable to the Company for such conversion, exchange, redemption or exercise will not be less than the par value of such shares, in the case of shares of Common Stock, or the lesser of such purchase price or such consideration, as the case may be, or the amount of such purchase price or such consideration, as the case may be, timely determined by the Board to constitute the stated capital applicable to such shares, in the case of shares of Preferred Stock;

(i) in the case of shares of Preferred Stock of any series, the Board will have taken all necessary corporate action to designate and establish the terms of such series and will have caused a certificate of designations respecting such series and conforming to the Company's Charter Documents and the Texas Business Organizations Code to be prepared and filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Texas;

(j) in the case of Warrants, the Board will have taken all necessary corporate action to authorize the creation of and the terms of such Warrants and the issuance of the Securities to be issued pursuant thereto and to approve the warrant agreement relating thereto; such warrant agreement will have been duly executed and delivered by the Company and the warrant agent thereunder appointed by the Company; neither such Warrants nor such warrant agreement will include any provision that is unenforceable; and such Warrants or certificates representing such Warrants will have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered in accordance with the provisions of such warrant agreement and the applicable definitive purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein;

(k) in the case of a series of Debt Securities issuable under an Indenture:

- the Board will have taken all necessary corporate action to designate and establish the terms of such Debt Securities in accordance with the terms of the Indenture under which such Debt Securities will be issued, and such Debt Securities will not include any provision that is unenforceable;
- the Indenture under which such Debt Securities will be issued will have become qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, and such qualification shall not have been terminated or rescinded;
- the trustee is qualified to act as trustee under the Indenture under which such Debt Securities will be issued;
- an indenture substantially in the form of the Indenture under which such Debt Securities will be issued will have been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and the trustee thereunder; and

3

- certificates evidencing such Debt Securities complying with the terms of the Indenture under which such Debt Securities will be issued will have been duly executed, authenticated, issued and delivered in accordance with the provisions of such Indenture and the applicable Purchase Agreement upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein;

(l) in the case of Units, the Board will have taken all necessary corporate action to establish the terms of such Units and the terms of the Securities, if any, such Units include and no agreement or other instrument establishing such Units or defining the rights of the holders of such Units will contain any provision that is unenforceable; and

(m) all necessary actions shall be taken by the Company so as not to violate any applicable law or result in a default under or breach of any agreement or instrument binding upon the Company and so as to comply with any requirement or restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company.

On the basis of the foregoing, and subject to the assumptions, limitations and qualifications set forth herein, we are of the opinion that:

1. The shares of Common Stock and Preferred Stock included in the Securities will, when issued, have been validly issued and will be fully paid and nonassessable.
2. The Warrants included in the Securities will, when issued, have been validly issued and constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms.
3. The Senior Debt Securities, Subordinated Debt Securities and Units included in the Securities will, when issued, constitute valid and legally binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms.

The foregoing opinion is based on and is limited to the Texas Business Organizations Code and the relevant contract law of the State of New York. We express no opinion as to any other laws, statutes, regulations or ordinances, including federal and state securities (or "blue sky") laws.

Our opinion that any document or Security is a valid and legally binding obligation of the Company is subject to (i) applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, arrangement, fraudulent conveyance, moratorium or other similar laws relating to or affecting the rights of creditors generally, (ii) general principles of equity, including without limitation concepts of materiality, reasonableness, good faith and fair dealing, and the possible unavailability of specific performance or injunctive relief and limitation of rights of acceleration, regardless of whether such enforceability is considered in a proceeding in equity or at law and (iii) limitations of rights to indemnification, exculpation and contribution which may be limited by applicable law or

equitable principles. We also express no opinion regarding the effectiveness of any waiver of stay, extension or usury laws or of unknown future rights, and we express no opinion regarding severability provisions.

4

You have informed us that you intend to issue Securities from time to time on a delayed or continuous basis. This opinion is limited to the laws referred to above as in effect on the date hereof. We understand that prior to issuing any Securities pursuant to the Registration Statement (i) you will advise us in writing of the terms thereof and (ii) you will afford us an opportunity to review the documents pursuant to which such Securities are to be issued or sold (including the applicable offering documents) and you will file such supplement or amendment to this opinion (if any) as we may advise you may be necessary or appropriate.

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and to the reference to us under the heading "Validity of the Securities" in the prospectus forming a part of the Registration Statement. In giving such consent, we do not admit that we are in the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Act or the rules and regulations of the Commission.

This opinion is limited to the specific issues addressed herein, and no opinion may be inferred or implied beyond that expressly stated herein.

Very truly yours,

/s/ BRACEWELL & GIULIANI LLP

5

Calculation of Ratios of Earnings to Fixed Charges and Preferred Stock Dividends

Our historical ratios of earnings to fixed charges for the periods indicated are set forth below.

The ratio of earnings to fixed charges is computed by dividing (i) income from continuing operations before income taxes and fixed charges by (ii) total fixed charges.

For purposes of computing these ratios (i) earnings consist of income before income taxes plus fixed charges, (ii) fixed charges, excluding interest on deposits, include interest expense (other than on deposits), preferred stock dividends and the estimated portion of rental expense attributable to interest, and (iii) fixed charges, including interest on deposits, include all interest expense, preferred stock dividends and the estimated portion of rental expense attributable to interest.

(Dollars in thousands)	Nine Months Ended Sept 30, 2015	Years Ended December 31,				
		2014	2013	2012	2011	2010
Fixed charges:						
Interest expenses, excluding deposits	\$ 392	\$ 498	\$ 254	\$ 386	\$ 475	\$ 116
Estimate of interest in rental expense	353	489	451	402	220	32
Preferred stock dividends (1)	91	121	91	152	115	—
Total fixed charges	<u>\$ 836</u>	<u>\$ 1,108</u>	<u>\$ 796</u>	<u>\$ 940</u>	<u>\$ 810</u>	<u>\$ 148</u>
Earnings:						
Income before taxes	\$ 9,031	\$ 7,910	\$ 5,185	\$ 1,615	\$ 122	\$ (1,679)
Add: fixed charges	836	1,109	796	939	810	148
Total earnings	<u>\$ 9,867</u>	<u>\$ 9,019</u>	<u>\$ 5,981</u>	<u>\$ 2,554</u>	<u>\$ 932</u>	<u>\$ (1,531)</u>
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges, excluding interest on deposits	11.80	8.14	7.51	2.72	1.15	(10.34)

(Dollars in thousands)	Nine Months Ended Sept 30, 2015	Years Ended December 31,				
		2014	2013	2012	2011	2010
Fixed charges:						
Interest expenses, including deposits	\$ 2,467	\$ 2,919	\$ 2,461	\$ 2,297	\$ 2,292	\$ 475
Estimate of interest in rental expense	353	489	451	402	220	32
Preferred stock dividends (1)	91	121	91	152	115	—
Total fixed charges	<u>\$ 2,911</u>	<u>\$ 3,529</u>	<u>\$ 3,003</u>	<u>\$ 2,851</u>	<u>\$ 2,627</u>	<u>\$ 507</u>
Earnings:						
Income before taxes	\$ 9,031	\$ 7,910	\$ 5,185	\$ 1,615	\$ 122	\$ (1,679)
Add: fixed charges	2,911	3,530	3,003	2,850	2,627	507
Total earnings	<u>\$ 11,942</u>	<u>\$ 11,440</u>	<u>\$ 8,188</u>	<u>\$ 4,465</u>	<u>\$ 2,749</u>	<u>\$ (1,172)</u>
Ratio of earnings to fixed charges, including interest on deposits	4.10	3.24	2.73	1.57	1.05	(2.31)

(1) Preferred stock dividends used in the ratio consist of the amount of pre-tax earnings required to pay the dividends of outstanding preferred stock.

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We have issued our report dated March 27, 2015 with respect to the consolidated financial statements, of Veritex Holdings, Inc. and subsidiary included in the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014, which are incorporated by reference in this Registration Statement. We consent to the incorporation by reference of the aforementioned report in this Registration Statement, and to the use of our name as it appears under the caption "Experts."

/s/ GRANT THORNTON LLP

Dallas, Texas
November 10, 2015

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We have issued our report dated July 22, 2014, audited by JonesBaggett LLP, who merged with Whitley Penn LLP as of November 1, 2014, with respect to the consolidated financial statements of Veritex Holdings, Inc. and Subsidiary for the year ended December 31, 2012 included in the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014, which is incorporated by reference in this Registration Statement on Form S-3. We consent to the incorporation by reference of the aforementioned report in this Registration Statement, and to the use of our name as it appears under the caption "Experts".

/s/ Whitley Penn LLP

Dallas, Texas
November 10, 2015

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

FORM T-1

STATEMENT OF ELIGIBILITY UNDER THE TRUST INDENTURE ACT OF 1939 OF A CORPORATION DESIGNATED TO ACT AS TRUSTEE

- Check if an Application to Determine Eligibility of
a Trustee Pursuant to Section 305(b)(2)
-

U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION

(Exact name of Trustee as specified in its charter)

31-0841368

I.R.S. Employer Identification No.

800 Nicollet Mall
Minneapolis, Minnesota
(Address of principal executive offices)

55402
(Zip Code)

Israel A. Lugo
U.S. Bank National Association
13737 Noel Road, Suite 800
Dallas, Texas 75240
(972) 581-1623

(Name, address and telephone number of agent for service)

Veritex Community Bank
(Issuer with respect to the Securities)

Texas
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

27-0973566
(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

8214 Westchester Drive, Suite 400
Dallas, Texas
(Address of Principal Executive Offices)

75225
(Zip Code)

Senior Debt Securities
Subordinated Debt Securities
(Title of the Indenture Securities)

FORM T-1

Item 1. GENERAL INFORMATION. Furnish the following information as to the Trustee.

- a) *Name and address of each examining or supervising authority to which it is subject.*
Comptroller of the Currency
Washington, D.C.
- b) *Whether it is authorized to exercise corporate trust powers.*
Yes

Item 2. AFFILIATIONS WITH OBLIGOR. *If the obligor is an affiliate of the Trustee, describe each such affiliation.*
None

Items 3-15 *Items 3-15 are not applicable because to the best of the Trustee's knowledge, the obligor is not in default under any Indenture for which the Trustee acts as Trustee.*

Item 16. LIST OF EXHIBITS: *List below all exhibits filed as a part of this statement of eligibility and qualification.*

1. A copy of the Articles of Association of the Trustee.*
2. A copy of the certificate of authority of the Trustee to commence business, attached as Exhibit 2.
3. A copy of the certificate of authority of the Trustee to exercise corporate trust powers, attached as Exhibit 3.
4. A copy of the existing bylaws of the Trustee.**
5. A copy of each Indenture referred to in Item 4. Not applicable.
6. The consent of the Trustee required by Section 321(b) of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, attached as Exhibit 6.
7. Report of Condition of the Trustee as of June 30, 2015 published pursuant to law or the requirements of its supervising or examining authority, attached as Exhibit 7.

* Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 25.1 to Amendment No. 2 to registration statement on S-4, Registration Number 333-128217 filed on November 15, 2005.

** Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 25.1 to registration statement on form S-3ASR, Registration Number 333-199863 filed on November 5, 2014.

2

SIGNATURE

Pursuant to the requirements of the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, the Trustee, U.S. BANK NATIONAL ASSOCIATION, a national banking association organized and existing under the laws of the United States of America, has duly caused this statement of eligibility and qualification to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, all in the City of Dallas, State of Texas on the 2nd of November, 2015.

By: /s/ Israel A. Lugo
Israel A. Lugo
Vice President

3

Exhibit 2



CERTIFICATE OF CORPORATE EXISTENCE


I, Thomas J. Curry, Comptroller of the Currency, do hereby certify that:

1. The Comptroller of the Currency, pursuant to Revised Statutes 324, et seq, as amended, and 12 USC 1, et seq, as amended, has possession, custody, and control of all records pertaining to the chartering, regulation, and supervision of all national banking associations.

2. "U.S. Bank National Association," Cincinnati, Ohio (Charter No. 24), is a national banking association formed under the laws of the United States and is authorized thereunder to transact the business of banking on the date of this certificate.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF, today,
July 3, 2015, I have hereunto subscribed
my name and caused my seal of office to
be affixed to these presents at the U.S.
Department of the Treasury, in the City
of Washington, District of Columbia.





Comptroller of the Currency

Exhibit 7U.S. Bank National Association
Statement of Financial Condition
As of 6/30/2015

(\$000's)

	6/30/2015
Assets	
Cash and Balances Due From Depository Institutions	\$ 17,896,807
Securities	102,874,924
Federal Funds	53,692
Loans & Lease Financing Receivables	252,013,047
Fixed Assets	4,310,148
Intangible Assets	13,076,832
Other Assets	23,776,797
Total Assets	\$ 414,002,247
Liabilities	
Deposits	\$ 307,828,983
Fed Funds	1,465,991
Treasury Demand Notes	0
Trading Liabilities	885,507
Other Borrowed Money	46,539,645
Acceptances	0
Subordinated Notes and Debentures	3,650,000
Other Liabilities	11,984,151
Total Liabilities	\$ 372,354,277
Equity	
Common and Preferred Stock	18,200
Surplus	14,266,400
Undivided Profits	26,502,086
Minority Interest in Subsidiaries	861,284
Total Equity Capital	\$ 41,647,970
Total Liabilities and Equity Capital	\$ 414,002,247